OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE, BID FORM
and
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

$7,275,000*

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(Collin County, Texas)

Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds
Series 2019

Bids Due
October 22, 2019
at 10:00 a.m., Central Time

**Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement.

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

$7,275,000*
LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Collin County, Texas)

UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

THE SALE

BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID: The Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Lovejoy Independent School District (the "District" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its $7,275,000* Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds"). Bidders may submit bids for the Bonds by either of the following methods:

(1) Submit bids electronically as described below in "BIDS BY INTERNET;" or
(2) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "BIDS BY FACSIMILE."

BIDS BY INTERNET: Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on October 22, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on October 22, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile, as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact i-Deal LLC at 1359 Broadway, 2nd Floor, New York, New York 10018, Telephone 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of PARITY shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the Issuer. The Issuer shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

BIDS BY FACSIMILE: Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by facsimile to the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. Attention: Mr. Doug Whitt at (214) 279-8683 by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on October 22, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by facsimile shall not be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit a bid by facsimile should, as a courtesy, submit an email message to dwhitt@samcocapital.com by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on October 22, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by facsimile.

Neither the District nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of either of the Financial Advisor's or the bidder's fax machine. Bids received by facsimile after the bid deadline will not be accepted. Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids are binding on the bidder.

PLACE AND TIME OF BID OPENING: The bids for the Bonds will be opened at the District's offices at 10:00 A.M. Central time, on October 22, 2019.

AWARD OF THE BONDS: In the order authorizing the Bonds that was adopted on February 20, 2019 (the "Bond Order"), the Board has delegated authority to certain District officials (each, a "Designated Financial Officer") the authority to execute a pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate") to establish the final terms and effectuate the sale of the Bonds, which terms will be evidenced in the Pricing Certificate (the Bond Order and the Pricing Certificate are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). Upon the opening of the bids as described above, the Designated Financial Officer shall award the Bonds by executing the Official Bid Form and the Pricing Certificate. The District, acting through the Designated Financial Officer, reserves the right to reject any and all bids and to waive any irregularities except time of submission.

THE BONDS

DESCRIPTION: The Bonds will be dated November 1, 2019 (the "Dated Date"). Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date and will be due on February 15, 2020, and each August 15 and February 15 thereafter until maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC"). DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of $5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

MATURITY SCHEDULE: The Bonds will be stated to mature on February 15 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

Maturity	Principal Amount*
2020	$150,000
**	**
2032	1,400,000
2033	1,850,000
2034	1,905,000
2035	1,970,000

ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS: After selecting the winning bid, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the principal amortization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the District and its Financial Advisor in $5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create a substantially level debt service schedule for the District. Such adjustments will not change the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds by more than 10% from the amount set forth herein or change the principal amount due on the Bonds in any year by more than 20% (excluding the 2020 maturity). The dollar amount bid for the Bonds by the winning bidder will be adjusted proportionately to reflect any increase or decrease in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds finally determined to be issued. The District will use its best efforts to communicate to the winning bidder any such adjustment within four (4) hours after the opening of the bids. Purchaser's compensation will be based upon the final par amount after any adjustment thereto, subsequent to the receipt and tabulation of the winning bid, within the aforementioned parameters.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Bonds as described above, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and/or the maturity schedule for the Bonds made by the District or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Bonds to the winning bidder as determined pursuant to "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – BASIS OF AWARD" herein and shall not affect such determination. The winning bidder may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS: Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that maturities 2032 through 2035 be combined into term bonds (the "Term Bonds"). Such Term Bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the Bond Order. (see "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption")

MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION: If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on February 15 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on February 15 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption "MATURITY SCHEDULE" (subject to adjustment, as provided in "ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS"). Term Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Term Bonds then subject to redemption. The District, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which have been purchased and canceled by the District and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

OPTIONAL REDEMPTION: The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2032 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

QUALIFIED TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS: The District will designate, or deemed designate, the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions" in the Official Statement.)

AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE AND SECURITY FOR PAYMENT: The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1207"), Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371"), and a bond order adopted by the Board of Trustees on February 20, 2019. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute approval a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the pricing certificate, together with the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes to be levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. (See "THE BONDS – Security" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR: The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Bond Order, the District covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

In the Bond Order the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, such Paying Agent/Registrar, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, is required to deliver the Security Register to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

In the event there is a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the District has agreed to notify each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at the address in the Security Register, stating the effective date of the change and the mailing address of the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM: The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDER: Further details regarding the Bonds and certain covenants of the District contained in the Bond Order are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

**Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES: The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than their par value, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date of the Bonds to the date of Initial Delivery (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than $103.50 nor greater than $112.00 will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS."** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. **The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 300 basis points (or 3.00% in rate)**. **No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used**. All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered.

BASIS OF AWARD: The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein and which produces the **lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate on the Bonds to the District**. The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the **Dated Date** of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid (but not interest accrued from the Dated Date to the date of their Initial Delivery). In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the District with information required to be submitted to the Texas Bond Review Board pursuant to Section 1202.008, Texas Government Code, as amended, the Initial Purchaser will be required to provide the District with a breakdown of its "underwriting spread" among the following categories: Takedown, Management Fee (if any), Legal Counsel Fee (if any) and Spread Expenses (if any).

ESTABLISHING THE ISSUE PRICE FOR THE BONDS: In order to provide the Issuer with information that enables it to comply with certain requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended relating to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the winning bidder will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the Issuer or to the Issuer's municipal advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Issuer's Municipal Advisor") (within 5 business days of the date on which the 10% Test, as defined below, is satisfied with respect to each of the maturities of the Bonds) the appropriate certification as to the Bonds' "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") substantially in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Notice of Sale. In the event the winning bidder will not reoffer any maturity of the Bonds for sale to the Public (as defined herein) by the Closing Date, the Issue Price Certificate may be modified in a manner approved by the Issuer. Each bidder, by submitting its bid, agrees to complete, execute, and timely deliver the appropriate form of the Issue Price Certificate, if its bid is accepted by the Issuer. It will be the responsibility of the winning bidder to institute such syndicate reporting requirements, to make such investigation, or otherwise to ascertain such facts necessary to enable it to make such certification with reasonable certainty. Any questions concerning such certification should be directed to Bond Counsel (identified in the Preliminary Official Statement).

For purposes of this section of this Notice of Sale:

(i) "Public" means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a Related Party,

(ii) "Underwriter" means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead Underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public),

(iii) "Related Party" means any two or more persons (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) that are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) more than 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other), and

(iv) "Sale Date" means the date that the Bonds are awarded by the Issuer to the winning bidder.

All actions to be taken by the Issuer under this Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Bonds may be taken on behalf of the Issuer by the Issuer's Municipal Advisor, and any notice or report to be provided to the Issuer may be provided to the Issuer's Municipal Advisor.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to this Notice of Sale to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds, as specified in the bid and, if so stated, in the Official Bid Form.

The Issuer intends to rely on Treasury Regulation section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of municipal bonds), which requires, among other things, that the Issuer receives bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds (the "Competitive Sale Requirement").

The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein. In the event that the bidding process does not satisfy the Competitive Sale Requirement, bids will not be subject to cancellation and the winning bidder will be required to hold-the-offering-price of each maturity of the Bonds, other than any maturity 10% of which have been sold to the Public on the Sale Date at the initial offering prices or any higher prices ("Hold-the-Price Bonds"), as described in the next paragraph.

By submitting a bid, the winning bidder agrees, on behalf of each Underwriter participating in the purchase of the Bonds, that each Underwriter will neither offer nor sell any maturity of the Hold-the-Price Bonds to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the Public during the period starting on the Sale Date and ending on the earlier of the following:

(1) the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the Sale Date; or

(2) the date on which the Underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the Public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the Public.

The winning bidder shall promptly advise the Issuer when such bidder has sold at least 10% of a maturity of the Hold-the-Price Bonds to the Public at a price that is not higher than the initial offering price to the Public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the Sale Date.

In the event that the bidding process does not satisfy the Competitive Sale Requirement, in order to assist the Issuer with documenting the establishment of the issue prices of the Bonds, the winning bidder agrees to promptly report to the Issuer the prices at which at least 10% of each maturity of the Bonds have been sold to the Public (the "10% Test") (if different interest rates apply within a maturity, each separate CUSIP number within that maturity will be subject to the 10% Test). That reporting obligation shall continue until 10% of each maturity of the Bonds is sold to the Public. By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each third-party distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each Underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such third-party distribution agreement, as applicable, (A) to report the prices at which it sells to the Public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allocated to it until either all such Bonds have been sold or it is notified by the winning bidder that the 10% Test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity, (B) to promptly notify the winning bidder of any sales of Bonds that, to its knowledge, are made to a purchaser who is a Related Party to an Underwriter, and (C) to acknowledge that, unless otherwise advised by the underwriter, dealer or broker-dealer, the winning bidder will assume that based on such agreement each order submitted by the underwriter, dealer or broker-dealer is a sale to the Public; and (ii) any agreement among underwriters or selling group agreement relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each Underwriter that is a party to a third-party distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public to require each underwriter or dealer that is a party to such third-party distribution agreement to report the prices at which it sells to the Public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allocated to it until either all such Bonds have been sold or it is notified by the winning bidder or such Underwriter that the 10% Test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity. Sales of any Bonds to any person that is a Related Party to an Underwriter shall not constitute sales to the public for purposes of this Notice of Sale.

GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT: A bank cashier's check, payable to the order of "Lovejoy Independent School District", in the amount of $145,500 which is 2% of the proposed par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required to accompany any bid. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be retained uncashed by the District pending the Purchaser's compliance with the terms of its bid and this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the Purchaser should fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds in accordance with its bid, then said check shall be cashed and accepted by the District as full and complete liquidated damages. The Good Faith Deposit may accompany the Official Bid Form or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the District prior to the opening of the bids, and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which authorizes its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. **The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the Closing of the Bonds**. No interest will be allowed on the Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying bids other than the winning bid will be returned promptly after the bids are opened, and an award of the Bonds has been made by the District.

ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD — DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:
Obligation of the District to receive information from winning bidder. In accordance with Texas Government Code, Section 2252.908, (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act") the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the winning bidder either:

(i) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"),

or

(ii) certifies in the Official Bid Form that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

In the event that the bidder's bid for the Bonds is the best bid received, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning bidder. That notification will serve as the District's conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and, unless the bidder is exempt from filing a Disclosure Form, such notification will obligate the winning bidder to promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the District to complete the award. The District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not comply with the requirements prescribed herein.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 – name of the governmental entity (*Lovejoy Independent School District*) and (b) item 3 – the identification number assigned to this contract by the District (*0001*) and description of the goods or services (*Purchase of the Lovejoy Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019*). **The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the "Disclosure Rules") require a business entity contracting with the District to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm, print, complete the unsworn declaration, sign, and deliver, in physical form, the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's "electronic portal" to the District. The completed and signed Disclosure Form must be sent by email, to the District's financial advisor at dwhitt@samcocapital.com, as soon as**

possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award. Upon receipt of the final written award, the winning bidder must submit the Disclosure Form with original signatures by email to Bond Counsel as follows: jgulbas@mphlegal.com

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. To the extent that the bidder is not exempt from filing a Disclosure Form and therefor makes such filing with the District, the Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provide that such declaration is made "under oath and under penalty of perjury." Consequently, a bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. **Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the District, and no final award will be made by the District regarding the sale of the Bonds until a completed Disclosure Form is received. The District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein.** Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form promptly upon notification from the District that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC's website at https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm.

IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD: For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

NO BOYCOTT OF ISRAEL VERIFICATION: In accordance with Chapter 2270, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 2270"), the District and other governmental entities in the State may not enter into a contract with a company for goods or services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it: (1) does not boycott Israel; and (2) will not boycott Israel during the term of the contract. To enable the District to comply with Chapter 2270, and to enable it to contract for the sale of the Bonds, the Official Bid Form for the Bonds includes a written verification of the bidder to the effect described above. Each bidder should review the "no Israel boycott verification" included in the Official Bid Form prior to making a bid for the Bonds to determine whether such statement can be made, which is a condition to making a bid for the Bonds.

VERIFICATION OF NO DEALINGS WITH FOREIGN TERROIST ORGANIZATIONS: Pursuant to Chapter 2252, Texas Government Code, the District will not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the bidder certifies that neither it nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company of affiliate of the same, is a company that contracts with or provides supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization, as defined by Section 2252.151(2), Texas Government Code, or identified as a company known to have contracts with or provide supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization as identified on a list prepared and maintained under Sections 2270.0201 or 2252.153, Texas Government Code. The Official Bid Form includes a written verification that the bidder certifies to the representations necessary and convenient for the compliance with the aforementioned laws and, at the request of the District, agrees to execute further written certifications as may be necessary or convenience for the District to establish compliance with the aforementioned laws.

OFFICIAL STATEMENT

To assist the winning bidder (the "Purchaser" or "Initial Purchaser") in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"), the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 15c2-12 OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION: The Issuer has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the Issuer deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, yields, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Initial Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the Issuer of the initial offering prices/yields of the Bonds.

Thereafter, the Issuer will complete and authorize distribution of the final Official Statement, being a modification of the Preliminary Official Statement, identifying the Initial Purchaser and containing such omitted information. The Issuer does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Initial Purchaser on or after the sale date, the Issuer intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Issuer makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under "NO LITIGATION AND OFFICIAL STATEMENT CERTIFICATION" as described below.

FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT: The Issuer will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of one hundred (100) copies of the Official Statement, together with information regarding interest rates, and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds. In addition, the District agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a "designated electronic format" (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The District consents to the distribution of such documents in a "designated electronic format." Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with MSRB Rule G-32. The Purchaser may arrange at its own expense to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the Issuer and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the Issuer will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The Issuer's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate 25 days after the date of initial delivery.

CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT: If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the Issuer learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Initial Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be incomplete or materially misleading, and unless the Initial Purchaser elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS – CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY," the Issuer will promptly prepare and supply to the Initial Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement, in a "designated electronic format" satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

NO LITIGATION AND OFFICIAL STATEMENT CERTIFICATION: At the time of payment for and delivery of the hereinafter defined Initial Bonds ("Initial Delivery"), the Initial Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the Issuer, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Issuer contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the Initial Delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the Issuer and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the Issuer, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Issuer believes to be reliable and the Issuer has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; (d) except as may be otherwise described in the Official Statement, there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the Issuer, since June 30, 2018, the date of the last financial statements of the Issuer appearing in the Official Statement; and (e) no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of the date hereof, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds. The Official Statement and this Official Notice of Sale have been approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds has been authorized, ratified and approved by the Board in the Bond Order, and the Initial Purchaser will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the Issuer.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT: The District has agreed in the Order to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Order containing the agreement described under such heading.

COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS: The District is of the view that during the past five years it has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule. However, for a variety of reasons, including increased disclosure enforcement initiatives of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the District began filing information regarding its authorized but unissued bonds in 2014.

DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS

INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND: Initial Delivery will be accomplished by the issuance of one or more fully registered Bonds in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to the Purchaser (the "Initial Bond" or "Initial Bonds"), signed by the duly appointed officers of the Board, by their manual or facsimile signatures, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bonds, they shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Bond for each maturity of the Bonds payable to Cede & Co. will be delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Bonds must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the District, or as otherwise directed by the District. The Purchaser will be given six business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that the delivery of the Initial Bond can be made on or about November 20, 2019, but if for any reason the District is unable to make delivery by December 18, 2019, then the District shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds an additional thirty days. If the Purchaser does not elect to extend its offer within six days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the District and the Purchaser shall be relieved of any further obligation. In no event shall the District be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided that such failure is due to circumstances beyond the District's reasonable control.

CUSIP NUMBERS: It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Initial Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the Issuer; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Initial Purchaser.

CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY: The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, the Initial Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel and the certificate regarding the Official Statement, and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE". In addition, if the Issuer fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Initial Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the Issuer within five (5) days thereafter.

NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE: The obligations of the Initial Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the Issuer to deliver the Initial Bonds, are subject to the additional condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bonds, there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the Issuer subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of Initial Delivery.

LEGAL OPINIONS: The District will furnish the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas as to the Bonds, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel, regarding the legality and validity of the Bonds issued in compliance with the provisions of the Bond Order. (See "LITIGATION" and "LEGAL MATTERS" in the Official Statement and "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" attached to the Official Statement.)

CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS: At any time before the Bonds are tendered for initial delivery to the Initial Purchaser, the Initial Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by Treasury regulations, by ruling or administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

RATING: The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's current outstanding unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "AA-" by S&P. There is no assurance that such ratings will continue for any given period of time or that the ratings will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of said rating company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of any such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price and marketability of the Bonds.

REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE: No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Issuer agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but the District will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state in which the Bonds are offered for sale.

ADDITIONAL COPIES: Subject to the limitations described herein, additional copies of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024.

In the Bond Order, the Board has delegated to the Designated Financial Officer the authority to approve the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and the Board has authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

____

Designated Financial Officer

Dated: October 15, 2019

OFFICIAL BID FORM

President and Board of Trustees
Lovejoy Independent School District
259 Country Club Road
Allen, Texas 75002

October 22, 2019

Ladies & Gentlemen:

Reference is made to your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated October 15, 2019 of $7,275,000* LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019 (the "Bonds"), both of which constitute a part hereof.

For your legally issued Bonds, as described in said Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement, we will pay you a price of par value thereof plus accrued interest from their Dated Date to the date of initial delivery to us, plus a cash premium of $________ **(no bid producing a cash premium that results in a dollar price of less than $103.50 nor greater than $112.00 will be considered)** for Bonds maturing and bearing interest as follows:

Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate
2020	$150,000	________
**	**	________
2032	1,400,000	________
2033	1,850,000	________
2034	1,905,000	________
2035	1,970,000	________

(Interest to Accrue from the Dated Date)

Of the principal maturities of the Bonds set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include multiple Term Bonds, one Term Bond or no Term Bond if none is indicated). For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table above will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

Term Bond Maturity Date February 15	Year of First Mandatory Redemption	Principal Amount of Term Bond	Interest Rate
________	________	________	________

Our calculation (which is not a part of this bid) of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

TRUE INTEREST COST ____________%

By accepting this bid, we understand the District will provide the copies of the Official Statement and of any amendments or supplements thereto in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale.

The Initial Bond(s) shall be registered in the name of the Purchaser. We will advise DTC of registration instructions at least five business days prior to the date set for Initial Delivery. It is the obligation of the Purchaser of the Bonds to complete the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

Cashier's Check of the _________________ (bank), ______________ (location), in the amount of $145,500 which represents our Good Faith Deposit is attached hereto or has been made available to you prior to the opening of the bid, in accordance with the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the closing of the Bonds.

We agree to accept delivery of the Initial Bond(s) through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bond(s) in immediately available funds at BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, no later than 10:00 A.M., Central time, on November 20, 2019 or thereafter on the date the Initial Bond(s) are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to the Official Notice of Sale relating to the Bonds to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds.

The undersigned agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to the District.

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

**Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.*

No Boycott of Israel Verification. The Purchaser hereby verifies that it and its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, does not boycott Israel and, to the extent this bid for the Bonds is a contract for goods or services, will not boycott Israel through the date of initial delivery of the Bonds. The foregoing verification is made solely to comply with Section 2270.002, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law. As used in the foregoing verification, 'boycott Israel' means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes. The Purchaser understands 'affiliate' to mean an entity that controls or is controlled by, or is under common control with, the Purchaser and exists to make a profit.

Iran, Sudan and Foreign Terrorist Organizations. The Purchaser represents that neither it nor any of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates is a company identified on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under section 2252.153 or Section 2270.0201, Texas Government Code, and posted on any of the following pages of such officer's internet website:

https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/sudanlist.pdf, https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/iran-list.pdf, or
https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/ftolist.pdf.

The foregoing representation is made solely to comply with Section 2252.152, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law and excludes the Purchaser and the Purchaser's parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, that the United States government has affirmatively declared to be excluded from its federal sanctions regime relating to Sudan or Iran or any federal sanctions regime relating to a foreign terrorist organization. The Purchaser understands "affiliate" to mean any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, the Purchaser and exists to make a profit

In accordance with Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act"), the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the winning bidder either:

(i) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"),

or

(ii) certifies below that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

Unless the bidder certifies that it is exempt from filing a Disclosure Form with the District, upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance and if required, the undersigned will complete an electronic form of the Disclosure Form through the TEC's electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed and sent by email to the District's financial advisor at dwhitt@samcocapital.com. The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form will prohibit the District from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

The Purchaser (mark one):

(i) Agrees to timely make a filing of a completed Disclosure Form with the District [___]

or

(ii) Hereby certifies that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity [___].

Respectfully submitted,

____
(Purchaser)

____
(Signature - Title)

____
(Telephone)

[District signature page follows.]

ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE

THE FOREGOING BID IS IN ALL THINGS HEREBY ACCEPTED this October 22, 2019 by a Designated Financial Officer of the District by authority conveyed in the Bond Order of the Board of Trustees of the LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT adopted on February 20, 2019.

____
Designated Financial Officer

CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

FORM **1295**

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.
Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

OFFICE USE ONLY
CERTIFICATION OF FILING

1 **Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.**

2 **Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.**

Lovejoy Independent School District

3 **Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the services, goods, or other property to be provided under the contract.**

0001

Purchase of the Lovejoy Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019

4

Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of interest (check applicable)	
		Controlling	Intermediary

5 **Check only if there is NO Interested Party.** ☐

6 **UNSWORN DECLARATION**

My name is ____, and my date of birth is _________________.

My address is ___________________________________, _________________, _____, __________, _______.
(street) (city) (state) (zip code) (country)

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed in ______________________________County, State of ____________, on the ____day of _________, 20____.
(month) (year)

____
Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity
(Declarant)

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

(**Form of Certificate if at least 3 bids are received from underwriters**)

The undersigned, as the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters ("Purchaser"), with respect to the purchase at competitive sale of the Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 issued by the Lovejoy Independent School District ("Issuer") in the principal amount of $7,275,000* ("Bonds"), hereby certifies and represents, based on its records and information, as follows:

(a) On the first day on which there was a binding contract in writing for the purchase of the Bonds by the Purchaser, the Purchaser's reasonably expected initial offering prices of each maturity of the Bonds with the same credit and payment terms (the "Expected Offering Prices") to a person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter are as set forth in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds, as attached to this Certificate as Schedule A. The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Bonds used by the Purchaser in formulating its bid to purchase the Bonds.

(b) The Purchaser had an equal opportunity to bid to purchase the Bonds and it was not given the opportunity to review other bids that was not equally given to all other bidders (i.e., no last look).

(c) The bid submitted by the Purchaser constituted a firm bid to purchase the Bonds.

For purposes of this Issue Price Certificate, the term "Underwriter" means (1) (i) a person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, or (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (1)(i) of this paragraph (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (2) any person who has more than 50% common ownership, directly or indirectly, with a person described in clause (1) of this paragraph.

The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Federal Tax Certificate and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds. Notwithstanding anything set forth herein, the Purchaser is not engaged in the practice of law and makes no representation as to the legal sufficiency of the factual matters set forth herein.

EXECUTED and DELIVERED as of this [ISSUE DATE].

[NAME OF PURCHASER], as Purchaser

By:____________________________________

Name:__________________________________

* *Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

(**Form of Certificate if less than 3 bids are received from underwriters**)

The undersigned, as the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters ("Purchaser"), with respect to the purchase at competitive sale of the Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 issued by the Lovejoy Independent School District ("Issuer") in the principal amount of $7,275,000* ("Bonds"), hereby certifies and represents, based on its records and information, as follows:

(a) [Other than the Bonds maturing in ____ ("Hold-the-Price Maturities"), the][The first prices at which at least ten percent ("Substantial Amount") of the principal amount of each maturity of the Bonds having the same credit and payment terms ("Maturity") was sold to a person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter ("Public") are their respective initial offering prices, as listed in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds that is attached to this Certificate as Schedule A.

(Add (b) and (c) only if winning bidder designates one or more maturities as Hold-the-Price Maturities)

(b) On or before the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of the Bonds ("Sale Date"), the Purchaser offered to the Public each Maturity of the Hold-the-Price Maturities at their respective initial offering prices, as set forth in Schedule A hereto ("Initial Offering Price").

(c) As set forth in the Notice of Sale, the Purchaser agreed in writing to neither offer nor sell any of the Hold-the-Price Maturities to any person at any higher price than the Initial Offering Price for each such Maturity until the earlier of the close of the fifth business day after the Sale Date or the date on which the Purchaser sells at least ten percent of a Hold-the-Price-Maturity of the Bonds to the Public at no higher price than the Initial Offering Price for such Maturity.

For purposes of this Issue Price Certificate, the term "Underwriter" means (1) (i) a person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, or (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (1)(i) of this paragraph (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (2) any person who has more than 50% common ownership, directly or indirectly, with a person described in clause (1) of this paragraph.

The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Federal Tax Certificate and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds. Notwithstanding anything set forth herein, the Purchaser is not engaged in the practice of law and makes no representation as to the legal sufficiency of the factual matters set forth herein.

EXECUTED and DELIVERED as of this [ISSUE DATE].

[NAME OF PURCHASER], as Purchaser

By:______________________________________

Name:____________________________________

* *Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

SCHEDULE A

PRICING WIRE OR EQUIVALENT COMMUNICATION

(*Attached*)

Rating: S&P: "AAA"
(See "RATING" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein)

PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT
Dated: October 15, 2019

NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY

In the opinion of McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein.

The Bonds will be designated, or deemed designated, by the District as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions.

$7,275,000*
LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Collin County, Texas)
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019

Dated Date: November 1, 2019 **Due: February 15, as shown on page ii**

The Lovejoy Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1207"), as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371") and an order (the "Bond Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted on February 20, 2019 by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Lovejoy Independent School District (the "District"). As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials (each a "Pricing Officer") to execute a pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate") establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the Pricing Certificate, together with the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2020, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of $5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "PLAN OF FINANCING - Purpose", "PLAN OF FINANCING - Refunded Bonds" and "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2032 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption"). Additionally, the Purchaser may select two or more consecutive maturities of the Bonds to be grouped together to form one or more "Term Bonds", and such Term Bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the Bond Order. (see "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption")

MATURITY SCHEDULE
(On Page ii)

The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser at a competitive sale (the "Purchaser") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the facilities of DTC on or about November 20, 2019.

BIDS DUE OCTOBER 22, 2019 BY 10:00 A.M., CENTRAL TIME

*Preliminary, subject to change.

$7,275,000*
LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Collin County, Texas)
UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

MATURITY SCHEDULE*
Base CUSIP No.: 547160 [1]

Maturity Date 2/15	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate	Initial Yield	CUSIP No. Suffix[1]
2020	$150,000			
***	***			
2032	1,400,000			
2033	1,850,000			
2034	1,905,000			
2035	1,970,000			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

**Preliminary, subject to change.*

[1] CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of The American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

BOARD OF TRUSTEES

Name	Date Initially Elected	Current Term Expires	Occupation
Chad Collins, President	2009	2022	Healthcare Executive
Amy Smith, Vice President	2016	2022	Event Planner
Anne Smith, Member	2017	2020	Homemaker
Matt Gournay, Member	2011	2020	Financial Advisor
Jennifer Kline, Member	2019	2022	Public Relations
Al Litchenburg, Member	2012	2021	Business Executive
Barrett Owens, Member	2019	2021	Realtor

APPOINTED OFFICIALS

Name	Position	Length of Education Service	Length of Service with District
Dr. Michael Goddard	Superintendent	18 Years	3 months
Dr. Dennis Womack	Assistant Superintendent of Operations	20 Years	14 Years
Dennis Muizers	Deputy Superintendent of Curriculum, Instruction, and Assessment	23 Years	14 Years
Shay Adams	Chief Financial Officer	21 Years	16 Years
Sancy Fuller	Executive Director of Special Education and Academic Support	19 Years	11 Years

CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, Denton, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Shay Adams
Chief Financial Officer
Lovejoy ISD
259 Country Club Road
Allen, Texas 75002
(469) 742-8000
(432) 523-3640

Doug Whitt / Brian Grubbs / Robert White
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210
Plano, Texas 75024
(214) 765-1469
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District or the Financial Advisor. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" AND "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASER MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEA DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY DTC AND TEA, RESPECTIVELY.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THIS ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING THE SCHEDULE, AND ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without this entire Official Statement.

The District	The Lovejoy Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Collin County, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
The Bonds	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of $7,275,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including particularly Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1207"), as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371") and the order (the "Bond Order") adopted by the Board on February 20, 2019. As permitted by provisions of Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials, each a "Pricing Officer" to execute a pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate") establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the Pricing Certificate and the Bond Order, are collectively referred to herein as the "Order"). Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "PLAN OF FINANCING - Purpose", "PLAN OF FINANCING - Refunded Bonds" and "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").
Paying Agent/Registrar	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
Security	The Bonds will constitute direct obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
Redemption	The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2032 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption"). Additionally, the Purchaser may select two or more consecutive maturities of the Bonds to be grouped together to form one or more "Term Bonds", and such Term Bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the Bond Order. (see "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption")
Permanent School Fund Guarantee	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (defined herein), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.")
Rating	The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (as defined herein) of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "AA-" by S&P. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program" and "RATING" herein.)
Tax Matters	In the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. (See "TAX MATTERS" and Appendix C - "Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.")
Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations	The District will designate, or deemed designate, the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions").
Payment Record	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
Legal Opinion	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel.
Delivery	When issued, anticipated to be on or about November 20, 2019.

INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Lovejoy Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Collin County, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") identified on page ii hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the Bond Order (defined below) adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District (the "Board") on February 20, 2019 authorizing the issuance of the Bonds and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request by writing the Lovejoy Independent School District, 259 Country Club Road, Allen, Texas 75002 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024 by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the initial Purchaser of the Bonds to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

PLAN OF FINANCING

Purpose

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be utilized to (i) refund certain of the District's currently outstanding indebtedness as disclosed in Schedule I hereto (the "Refunded Bonds") for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuance of the Bonds.

Refunded Bonds

The Order provides that from a portion of the proceeds of the sale of the Bonds to the Purchaser, the District will deposit with BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, the escrow agent for the Refunded Bonds (the "Escrow Agent"), an amount, together with other lawfully available funds of the District, which will be sufficient to accomplish the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Bonds on February 15, 2020 (the "Redemption Date"). Such funds will be held by the Escrow Agent in an escrow account (the "Escrow Fund") in cash uninvested or will be invested in Defeasance Securities authorized by Section 1207.062 Texas Government Code and the bond order authorizing the Refunded Bonds. Public Finance Partners LLC, a firm of independent certified public accountants, will issue its report (the "Report") verifying at the time of delivery of the Bonds to the Purchaser the mathematical accuracy of the schedules that demonstrate the Defeasance Securities will mature and pay interest in such amounts which, together with any uninvested funds in the Escrow Fund, will be sufficient to pay, when due, the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds on and to the Redemption Date. Such maturing principal of and interest on the Defeasance Securities will not be available to pay the Bonds (see "VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS").

By the deposit of cash and Defeasance Securities with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the District will have effected the defeasance of the Refunded Bonds pursuant to the terms of Chapter 1207 and the bond order authorizing the issuance of the Refunded Bonds. It is the opinion of Bond Counsel that as a result of such deposit, and in reliance on the Report, the Refunded Bonds will be outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payments from the Defeasance Securities and cash held for such purpose by the Escrow Agent, and the Refunded Bonds will not be deemed as being outstanding obligations of the District, payable from the sources and secured in the manner provided in the orders authorizing their issuance or for any other purpose, and the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available in the Escrow Fund for the payment of the Refunded Bonds.

Upon defeasance of the Refunded Bonds, the payment of the Refunded Bonds will no longer be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund of Texas.

Sources and Uses of Funds

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds, together with a cash contribution from the District, will be applied approximately as follows:

Sources	
Par Amount of Bonds	$
Original Issue Reoffering Premium	
Accrued Interest	
Issuer Contribution	
Total Sources of Funds	$
Uses	
Deposit to Escrow Fund	$
Costs of Issuance	
Purchaser's Discount	
Deposit to Interest and Sinking Fund	
Total Uses of Funds	$

THE BONDS

Authorization

The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of $7,275,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, including Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371") and an order (the "Bond Order") adopted on February 20, 2019 by the Board, which authorizes the issuance of the Bonds. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, the Board, in the Bond Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials, each a “Pricing Officer” to execute a pricing certificate (the “Pricing Certificate”) establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds (the Pricing Certificate and the Bond Order are collectively referred to herein as the “Order”).

General Description

The Bonds will be dated November 1, 2019 (the “Dated Date”) and will bear interest from the Dated Date. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on page ii of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on February 15, 2020 and on each February 15 and August 15 and thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of $5,000 of principal or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar’s registration books on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York (“DTC”), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in “BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM” herein.

If the date for any payment on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

Optional Redemption

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2032, are subject to redemption, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of $5,000 or integral multiples thereof, on August 15, 2029, or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed. Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice.

With respect to any optional redemption of the Bonds, unless certain prerequisites to such redemption required by the Order have been met and money sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds to be redeemed will have been received by the Paying Agent/Registrar prior to the giving of such notice of redemption, such notice will state that said redemption may, at the option of the District, be conditional upon the satisfaction of such prerequisites and receipt of such money by the Paying Agent/Registrar on or prior to the date fixed for such redemption or upon any prerequisite set forth in such notice of redemption. If a conditional notice of redemption is given and such prerequisites to the redemption are not fulfilled, such notice will be of no force and effect, the District will not redeem such Bonds, and the Paying Agent/Registrar will give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given, to the effect that such Bonds have not been redeemed. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER RECEIVED BY THE BONDHOLDER, AND, SUBJECT TO PROVISION FOR PAYMENT OF THE REDEMPTION PRICE HAVING BEEN MADE, AND ANY PRECONDITIONS STATED IN THE NOTICE OF REDEMPTION HAVING BEEN SATISFIED INTEREST ON THE REDEEMED BONDS SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE FROM AND AFTER SUCH REDEMPTION DATE NOTWITHSTANDING THAT A BOND HAS NOT BEEN PRESENTED FOR PAYMENT.

Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption

Two or more consecutive maturities of the Bonds may be grouped together as a term bond by the Purchaser, and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the Order. In that event, the redemption provisions will be described in the final Official Statement.

Security

The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM” and “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM”).

Permanent School Fund Guarantee

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

Legality

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

Payment Record

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

Amendments

In the Order, the District has reserved the right to amend the Order without the consent of any holder for the purpose of amending or supplementing the Order to (i) cure any ambiguity, defect or omission therein that does not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (ii) grant additional rights or security for the benefit of the holders, (iii) add events of default as shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of the Order that do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (iv) qualify the Order under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or corresponding provisions of federal laws from time to time in effect or (v) make such other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising under the Order that are not inconsistent with the provisions thereof and which, in the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders.

The Order further provides that the majority of owners of the Bonds shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment not described above to the Order if it is deemed necessary or desirable by the District; provided, however, that without the consent of 100% of the holders in principal amount of the then outstanding Bonds so affected, no amendment may be made for the purpose of: (i) making any change in the maturity of any of the outstanding Bonds; (ii) reducing the rate of interest borne by any of the outstanding Bonds; (iii) reducing the amount of the principal of or redemption premium, if any, payable on any outstanding Bonds; (iv) modifying the terms of payment of principal or interest on outstanding Bonds or imposing any condition with respect to such payment; or (v) changing the minimum percentage of the principal amount of the Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment. Reference is made to the Order for further provisions relating to the amendment thereof.

Defeasance

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when payment of the principal amount of the Bonds plus interest accrued on the Bonds to their due date (whether such due date be by reason of stated maturity, redemption or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with a paying agent, or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money in an amount sufficient to make such payment and/or (2) Defeasance Securities, that will mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, and thereafter the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available to such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) for the payment of such defeased Bonds, including any insufficiency therein caused by the failure of such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) to receive payment when due on the Defeasance Securities. The District has additionally reserved the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Defeasance Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Order provides that "Defeasance Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds. Current State law permits defeasance with the following types of securities: (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the District authorizes the defeasance, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, and (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that on the date the governing body of the District adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the financial arrangements have been refunded and are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent. The Pricing Officer may restrict such eligible Defeasance Securities as deemed appropriate. There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners will be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used for defeasance purposes or that for any other Defeasance Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid. Provided, however, the District has reserved the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished.

Defeasance will automatically cancel the Permanent School Fund Guarantee with respect to those defeased Bonds.

REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES

The Order establishes specific events of default with respect to the Bonds, and provides that if the District defaults in the payment of principal or interest on the Bonds when due, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order and the continuation thereof for a period of 60 days after notice of default is given by the District by any owner, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel District officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order covenants and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the bondholders upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court has ruled in Tooke v. City of Mexia, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Chapter 1371, which pertains to the issuance of public securities by issuers such as the District, including the Bonds, permits the District to waive sovereign immunity in the proceedings authorizing its bonds, but in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, the District has not waived sovereign immunity, as permitted by Chapter 1371. Because it is unclear whether the Texas legislature has effectively waived the District's sovereign immunity from a suit for money damages, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion and by governmental immunity.

BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Purchaser believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or any other notices, to Direct Participants, (2) DTC or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds) or redemption, or any other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with Direct Participants are on file with DTC.

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited Securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com.

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and

Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as, redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments with respect to the Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE

Paying Agent/Registrar

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

Successor Paying Agent/Registrar

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

Initial Registration

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

Future Registration

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

Record Date For Interest Payment

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

Limitation on Transfer of Bonds

The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date or (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 45 days prior to its redemption date.

Replacement Bonds

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM

The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser.

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

History and Purpose

The PSF was created with a $2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is generally authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). (But see "2019 Texas Legislative Session" for a description of legislation that is expected to change the composition of the SLB). As of August 31, 2018, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 23% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2018 distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated $247 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was $1,235.8 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018, as filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2018 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2018 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2018, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2018 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2018 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/ and with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org. Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml. A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

2019 Texas Legislative Session

During the 86th Regular Session of the Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 27, 2019 (the "86th Session"), various bills were enacted that relate to the PSF. Among such enacted legislation are bills that relate to the composition of the SLB and its relationship to the SBOE with respect to the management of the PSF. Legislation was approved that will change the composition of the SLB to a five member board from a three member board. Under that bill, the Land Commissioner will continue to head the SLB, but the remaining four members will be appointed by the Governor, and of those four members, two are required to be selected from a list of nominees to be submitted to the Governor by the SBOE. That legislation also requires an annual joint meeting of the SLB and the SBOE for the purpose of discussing the allocation of the assets of the PSF and the investment of money in the PSF. Other enacted legislation requires the SLB and the SBOE to provide quarterly financial reports to each other and creates a "permanent school fund liquid account" in the PSF for the purpose of receiving funds transferred from the SLB on a quarterly basis that are not then invested by the SLB or needed within the forthcoming quarter for investment by the SBOE. Such funds shall be invested in liquid assets in the same manner that the PSF is managed until such time as the funds are required for investment by the SLB. That legislation also requires the Texas Education Agency, in consultation with the GLO, to conduct a study regarding distributions to the ASF from the PSF. In addition, a joint resolution was approved that proposes a constitutional amendment to the Texas Constitution to increase the permissible amount of distributions to the ASF from revenue derived during a year from PSF land or other properties from $300 million to $600 million annually. That constitutional change is subject to approval at a State-wide referendum to be conducted on November 5, 2019.

Other legislation enacted during the 86th Session provides for the winding up of the affairs of an open-enrollment charter school that ceases operations, including as a result of the revocation or other termination of its charter. In particular, among other provisions, the legislation addresses the disposition of real and personal property of a discontinued charter school and provides under certain circumstances for reimbursement to be made to the State, if the disposed property was acquired with State funds; authorizes the Commissioner to adopt a rule to govern related party transactions by charter schools; and creates a "charter school liquidation fund" for the management of any reclaimed State funds, including, in addition to other potential uses, for the use of deposit of such reclaimed funds to the Charter District Reserve Fund.

No assessment has been made by the TEA or PSF staff as to the potential financial impact of any legislation enacted during the 86th Session, including the increase in the permissible amount that may be transferred from the PSF to the ASF, should State voters approve the proposed constitutional amendment described above on November 5, 2019.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2018, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 40.52% in public market equity investments; 13.25% in fixed income investments; 10.35% in absolute return assets; 9.16% in private equity assets; 7.47% in real estate assets; 6.78% in risk parity assets; 5.95% in real return assets; 6.21% in emerging market debt; and 0.31% in unallocated cash.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

Management and Administration of the Fund

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the SLB. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was $23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately $117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017. Based upon the cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2018, the State Law Capacity increased from $111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017 to $118,511,255,268 on August 31, 2018 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, $117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/, which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general could be adversely affected by a number of factors, including changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, changes in State laws that implement funding decisions for school districts and charter districts, which could adversely affect the credit quality of those districts, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

The School District Bond Guarantee Program

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 27, 2019 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.85%. As of June 10, 2019, there were 181 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 764 charter school campuses operating under such charters (though as of such date, 15 of such campuses have not begun serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of $500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

From time to time, TEA has limited new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to capacity limits specified by the Act. Legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modified the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increased the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of April 30, 2019, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 69.90% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program (based on unaudited data). SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.85% in February 2019. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE determined not to implement a previously approved the multiplier increase to 3.75 times market value, opting to increase the multiplier to 3.50 times effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of April 30, 2019, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.87% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

Charter District Risk Factors

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of $60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At April 30, 2019, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained $14,743,830.

Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

Legislation was approved during the 86th Session that provides supplemental appropriations to the TEA in amounts of $535,200,000 and $636,000,000 for the fiscal biennia ending August 31, 2019 and August 31, 2021, respectively. Those appropriations are designated for use as an adjustment to school district property values and reimbursement for disaster remediation costs as a result of Hurricane Harvey. That legislation also included a reimbursement to the TEA in the amount of $271,300,000 for costs previously incurred by the TEA for increased student costs, the reduction in school district property values and other disaster remediation costs stemming from Hurricane Harvey. For fiscal year 2018, TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATING" herein.

Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value[(1)]	Market Value[(1)]
2014	$27,596,692,541	$38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018[(2)]	33,860,358,647	44,074,197,940

[(1)] SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

[(2)] At August 31, 2018, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately $13.4 million, $238.8 million, $2,983.3 million, $7.5 million, and $4,247.3 million, respectively, and market values of approximately $2,022.8 million, $661.1 million, $3,126.7 million, $4.2 million, and $4,247.3 million, respectively. At April 30, 2019, the PSF had a book value of $34,917,398,274 and a market value of $44,978,512,134. April 30, 2019 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount[(1)]
2014	$58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069[(2)]

[(1)] Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

[(2)] As of August 31, 2018 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was $126,346,333,815, of which $47,265,432,746 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2018, there were $79,080,901,069 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and using the IRS Limit at that date of $117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), 97.35% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 2.65% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category[1]

	School District Bonds		Charter District Bonds		Totals	
Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount
2014[2]	2,869	$58,061,805,783	10	$302,545,000	2,879	$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018[3]	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069

(1) Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

(2) Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

(3) At April 30, 2019 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were $82,005,532,177 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,269 school district issues, aggregating $80,311,477,177 in principal amount and 46 charter district issues, aggregating $1,694,055,000 in principal amount. At April 30, 2019, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was $3,265,722,717 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2018, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2018, the Fund balance was $44.0 billion, an increase of $2.6 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long-term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2018, were 7.23%, 7.68% and 6.92%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, five-year, and ten-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 8.69%, 7.78%, and 4.23%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2018, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2018, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of $4.2 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of $5.2 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2018, totaled $1.5 billion in real estate investments and $2.1 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2018, the remaining commitments totaled approximately $2.6 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 19.83%, 23.95%, 3.51%, and -1.07%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of -0.78% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 6.66%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 12.01% and 15.94%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 3.43%, while real return assets yielded 0.70%. Emerging market debt produced a return of -11.40%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 7.23% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, out-performing the benchmark index of 6.89% by approximately 34 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 8.69% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2018.

For fiscal year 2018, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled $4.0 billion, a decrease of $1.4 billion from fiscal year 2017 earnings of $5.4 billion. This decrease reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2018. In fiscal year 2018, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, decreased 17.1% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2018. This decrease is primarily attributable to a decrease in PSF(SLB) quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2017 and 2018, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled $1.1 billion and $1.2 billion, respectively. There were no contributions to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal years 2017 and 2018.

At the end of the 2018 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed $79.1 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 7,242 school district and charter district bond issues totaling $176.4 billion in principal amount. During the 2018 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program remained flat at 3,293. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by $4.8 billion or 6.5%. The State Capacity Limit increased by $6.9 billion, or 6.2%, during fiscal year 2018 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund used to calculate that Program capacity limit. The effective capacity of the Program increased by only $5.7 billion, or 5.2%, during fiscal year 2018 as the IRS Limit was reached during the fiscal year, and it is the lower of the two State and federal capacity limits for the Program.

2011 Constitutional Amendment

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately $2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under “The Total Return Constitutional Amendment” the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a $2.2 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, to be made in equal monthly increments of $92.2 million, which represents a 2.981% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of $220.97, based on 2018 preliminary student average daily attendance of 5,004,998. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB transfer $10 million to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and $45 million in fiscal year 2021.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to $300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

Other Events and Disclosures

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an $18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of $11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of $30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and $30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2018, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/. The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on February 1, 2019, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c2-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org, and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077 or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

Annual Reports

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

Event Notices

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

Availability of Information

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at www.emma.msrb.org.

Limitations and Amendments

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

SEC Exemptive Relief

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than $10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

> Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made numerous changes to the current public school finance system, the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, and the calculation of defined tax rates, including particularly those contained in House Bill 3 ("HB 3") and Senate Bill 2 ("SB 2"). In some instances, the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2 will require further interpretation in connection with their implementation in order to resolve ambiguities contained in the bills. The District is still in the process of (a) analyzing the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2, and (b) monitoring the on-going guidance provided by TEA. The information contained herein under the captions "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" is subject to change, and only reflects the District's understanding of HB 3 and SB 2 based on information available to the District as of the date of this Official Statement. Prospective investors are encouraged to review HB 3, SB 2, and the Property Tax Code for definitive requirements for the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, the calculation of the defined tax rates, and the administration of the current public school finance system.

Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the public school finance system as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 43 through 49 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each school district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a maintenance and operations ("M&O") tax to pay current expenses and an interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. School districts may not increase their M&O tax rate for the purpose of creating a surplus to pay debt service on bonds. Prior to 2006, school districts were authorized to levy their M&O tax at a voter-approved rate, generally up to $1.50 per $100 of taxable value. Since 2006, the State Legislature has enacted various legislation that has compressed the voter-approved M&O tax rate, as described below. Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding bonded indebtedness through the levy of an I&S tax at a rate not to exceed $0.50 per $100 of taxable value at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, school districts generally may levy an I&S tax sufficient to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations" herein). Because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by school districts with the same I&S tax rate and M&O tax rate is also subject to wide variation; however, the public school finance funding formulas are designed to generally equalize local funding generated by a school district's M&O tax rate.

Prior to the 2019 Legislative Session, a school district's maximum M&O tax rate for a given tax year was determined by multiplying that school district's 2005 M&O tax rate levy by an amount equal a compression percentage set by legislative appropriation or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"). This compression percentage was historically set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at $1.00 per $100 of taxable value, since most school districts in the State had a voted maximum M&O tax rate of $1.50 per $100 of taxable value (though certain school districts located in Harris County had special M&O tax rate authorizations allowing a higher M&O tax rate). School districts were permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate up to $0.04 above the compressed tax rate or, with voter-approval at a valid election in the school district, up to $0.17 above the compressed tax rate (for most school districts, this equated to an M&O tax rate between $1.04 and $1.17 per $100 of taxable value). School districts received additional State funds in proportion to such taxing effort.

Local Funding for School Districts

During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made several significant changes to the funding methodology for school districts (the "2019 Legislation"). The 2019 Legislation orders a school district's M&O tax rate into two distinct parts: the "Tier One Tax Rate", which is the local M&O tax rate required for a school district to receive any part of the basic level of State funding (referred to herein as "Tier One") under the Foundation School Program, as further described below, and the "Enrichment Tax Rate", which is any local M&O tax effort in excess of its Tier One Tax Rate. The 2019 Legislation amended formulas for the State Compression Percentage and Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (each as described below) to compress M&O tax rates in response to year-over-year increases in property values across the State and within a school district, respectively. The discussion in this subcaption "Local Funding For School Districts" is generally intended to describe funding provisions applicable to all school districts; however, there are distinctions in the funding formulas for school districts that generate local M&O tax revenues in excess of the school districts' funding entitlements, as further discussed under the subcaption "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Revenue Level In Excess of Entitlement" herein.

State Compression Percentage

The "State Compression Percentage" for the State fiscal year ending in 2020 (the 2019-2020 school year) is a statutorily-defined percentage of the rate of $1.00 per $100 at which a school district must levy its Tier One Tax Rate to receive the full amount of the Tier One funding to which a school district is entitled. For the State fiscal year ending in 2020, the State Compression

Percentage is set at 93% per $100 of taxable value. Beginning in the State fiscal year ending in 2021, the State Compression Percentage is the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) 93% or a lower percentage set by appropriation for a school year; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the estimated total taxable property value of the State (as submitted annually to the State Legislature by the State Comptroller) has increased by at least 2.5% over the prior year; and (3) the prior year State Compression Percentage. For any year, the maximum State Compression Percentage is 93%.

Maximum Compressed Tax Rate

Pursuant to the 2019 Legislation, beginning with the State fiscal year ending in 2021 (the 2020-2021 school year) the Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (the "MCR") is the tax rate per $100 of valuation of taxable property at which a school district must levy its Tier One Tax Rate to receive the full amount of the Tier One funding to which the school district is entitled. The MCR is equal to the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) the school district's prior year MCR; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the school district experienced a year-over-year increase in property value of at least 2.5%; or (3) the product of the State Compression Percentage for the current year multiplied by $1.00. However, each year the TEA shall evaluate the MCR for each school district in the State, and for any given year, if a school district's MCR is calculated to be less than 90% of any other school district's MCR for the current year, then the school district's MCR is instead equal to the school district's prior year MCR, until TEA determines that the difference between the school district's MCR and any other school district's MCR is not more than 10%. These compression formulas are intended to more closely equalize local generation of Tier One funding among districts with disparate tax bases and generally reduce the Tier One Tax Rates of school districts as property values increase.

Tier One Tax Rate

For the 2019-2020 school year, the Tier One Tax Rate is the State Compression Percentage multiplied by (i) $1.00, or (ii) for a school district that levied an M&O tax rate for the 2018-2019 school year that was less than $1.00 per $100 of taxable value, the total number of cents levied by the school district for the 2018-2019 school year for M&O purposes; effectively setting the Tier One Tax Rate for the State fiscal year ending in 2020 for most school districts at $0.93. Beginning in the 2020-2021 school year, a school district's Tier One Tax Rate is defined as a school district's M&O tax rate levied that does not exceed the school district's MCR.

Enrichment Tax Rate

The Enrichment Tax Rate is the number of cents a school district levies for M&O in excess of the Tier One Tax Rate, up to an additional $0.17. The Enrichment Tax Rate is divided into two components: (i) "Golden Pennies" which are the first $0.08 of tax effort in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate; and (ii) "Copper Pennies" which are the next $0.09 in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate plus Golden Pennies.

School districts may levy an Enrichment Tax Rate at a level of their choice, subject to the limitations described under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate"; however to levy any of the Enrichment Tax Rate in a given year, a school district must levy a Tier One Tax Rate equal to $0.93 for the 2019-2020 school year, or equal to the school district's MCR for the 2020-2021 and subsequent years. Additionally, a school district's levy of Copper Pennies is subject to compression if the guaranteed yield (i.e., the guaranteed level of local tax revenue and State aid generated for each cent of tax effort) of Copper Pennies is increased from one year to the next (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts – Tier Two").

State Funding for School Districts

State funding for school districts is provided through the two-tiered Foundation School Program, which guarantees certain levels of funding for school districts in the State. School districts are entitled to a legislatively appropriated guaranteed yield on their Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate. When a school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate generate tax revenues at a level below the respective entitlement, the State will provide "Tier One" funding or "Tier Two" funding, respectively, to fund the difference between the school district's entitlements and the calculated M&O revenues generated by the school district's respective M&O tax rates.

The first level of funding, Tier One, is the basic level of funding guaranteed to all school districts based on a school district's Tier One Tax Rate. Tier One funding may then be "enriched" with Tier Two funding. Tier Two provides a guaranteed entitlement for each cent of a school district's Enrichment Tax Rate, allowing a school district increase or decrease its Enrichment Tax Rate to supplement Tier One funding at a level of the school district's own choice. While Tier One funding may be used for the payment of debt service (except for school districts subject to the recapture provisions of Chapter 49 of the Texas Education Code, as discussed herein), and in some instances is required to be used for that purpose (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations"), Tier Two funding may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

The current public school finance system also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of $1,323,444,300 for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the school district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities, provided that a school district qualifies for such funding and that the State Legislature makes sufficient appropriations to fund the allotments for a State fiscal biennium. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the State Legislature.

Tier One

Tier One funding is the basic level of funding guaranteed to a school district, consisting of a State-appropriated baseline level of funding (the "Basic Allotment") for each student in "Average Daily Attendance" (being generally calculated as the sum of student attendance for each State-mandated day of instruction divided by the number of State-mandated days of instruction, defined herein as "ADA"). The Basic Allotment is revised downward if a school district's Tier One Tax Rate is less than the State-determined threshold. The Basic Allotment is supplemented by additional State funds, allotted based upon the unique school district characteristics and demographics of students in ADA, to make up most of a school district's Tier One entitlement under the Foundation School Program.

For the 2019-2020 State fiscal year, the Basic Allotment for school districts with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to $0.93, is $6,160 for each student in ADA and is revised downward for school districts with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than $0.93. For the State fiscal year ending in 2021 and subsequent State fiscal years, the Basic Allotment for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to the school district's MCR, is $6,160 (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) for each student in ADA and is revised downward for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than the school district's MCR. The Basic Allotment is then supplemented for all school districts by various weights to account for differences among school districts and their student populations. Such additional allotments include, but are not limited to, increased funds for students in ADA who: (i) attend a qualified special education program, (ii) are diagnosed with dyslexia or a related disorder, (iii) are economically disadvantaged, or (iv) have limited English language proficiency. Additional allotments to mitigate differences among school districts include, but are not limited to: (i) a transportation allotment for mileage associated with transporting students who reside two miles or more from their home campus, (ii) a fast growth allotment (for school districts in the top 25% of enrollment growth relative to other school districts), and (iii) a college, career and military readiness allotment to further Texas' goal of increasing the number of students who attain a post-secondary education or workforce credential, and (iv) a teacher incentive allotment to increase teacher compensation retention in disadvantaged or rural school districts. A school district's total Tier One funding, divided by $6,160, is a school district's measure of students in "Weighted Average Daily Attendance" ("WADA"), which serves to calculate Tier Two funding.

Tier Two

Tier Two supplements Tier One funding and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., Golden Pennies and Copper Pennies) depending on the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate. Golden Pennies generate a guaranteed yield equal to the greater of (i) the local revenue per student in WADA per cent of tax effort available to a school district at the ninety-sixth (96th) percentile of wealth per student in WADA, or (ii) the Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.016. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of $98.56 per student in WADA for each Golden Penny levied. Copper Pennies generate a guaranteed yield per student in WADA equal to the school district's Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.008. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of $49.28 per student in WADA for each Copper Penny levied. For any school year in which the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA exceeds the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA for the preceding school year, a school district is required to reduce its Copper Pennies levied so as to generate no more revenue per student in WADA than was available to the school district for the preceding year. Accordingly, the increase in the guaranteed yield from $31.95 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2018-2019 school year to $49.28 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2019-2020 school year requires school districts to compress their levy of Copper Pennies by a factor of 0.64834. As such, school districts that levied an Enrichment Tax Rate of $0.17 in school year 2018-2019 must reduce their Enrichment Tax Rate to approximately $0.138 per $100 taxable value for the 2019-2020 school year.

Existing Debt Allotment, Instruction Facilities Allotment, and New Instructional Facilities Allotment

The Foundation School Program also includes facilities funding components consisting of the IFA and the EDA, subject to legislative appropriation each State fiscal biennium. To the extent funded for a biennium, these programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a school district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of I&S tax levied to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The IFA Yield has been $35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where new IFA awards are available, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the TEA before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA State assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a school district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the school district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) $100,000 or (b) $250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a school district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded.

State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") is the lesser of (i) $40 per student in ADA or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of $60 million more than the EDA to which school districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were $35. The portion of a school district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first $0.29 of its I&S tax rate (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the State Legislature). In general, a school district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the school district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the school district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A school district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the school district receives IFA funding.

Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the State Legislature for the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service payments during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium on new bonds issued by school districts in the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

A school district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to school districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. In the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of $100,000,000 for each fiscal year of the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium for NIFA allotments.

Tax Rate and Funding Equity

The Commissioner may adjust a school district's funding entitlement if the funding formulas used to determine the school district's entitlement result in an unanticipated loss or gain for a school district. Any such adjustment requires preliminary approval from the Legislative Budget Board and the office of the Governor, and such adjustments may only be made through the 2020-2021 school year.

Additionally, the Commissioner may proportionally reduce the amount of funding a school district receives under the Foundation School Program and the ADA calculation if the school district operates on a calendar that provides less than the State-mandated minimum instruction time in a school year. The Commissioner may also adjust a school district's ADA as it relates to State funding where disaster, flood, extreme weather or other calamity has a significant effect on a school district's attendance.

Furthermore, "property-wealthy" school districts that received additional State funds under the public school finance system prior to the enactment of the 2019 Legislation are entitled to an equalized wealth transition grant on an annual basis through the 2023-2024 school year in an amount equal to the amount of additional revenue such school district would have received under former Texas Education Code Sections 41.002(e) through (g), as those sections existed on January 1, 2019. This grant is phased out through the 2023-2024 school year as follows: (1) 20% reduction for the 2020-2021 school year, (2) 40% reduction for the 2021-2022 school year, (3) 60% reduction for the 2022-2023 school year, and (4) 80% reduction for the 2023-2024 school year.

Local Revenue Level in Excess of Entitlement

A school district that has sufficient property wealth per student in ADA to generate local revenues on the school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Copper Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlements (a "Chapter 49 school district"), is subject to the local revenue reduction provisions contained in Chapter 49 of Texas Education Code, as amended ("Chapter 49"). Additionally, in years in which the amount of State funds appropriated specifically excludes the amount necessary to provide the guaranteed yield for Golden Pennies, local revenues generated on a school district's Golden Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlement are subject to the local revenue reduction provisions of Chapter 49. To reduce local revenue, Chapter 49 school districts are generally subject to a process known as "recapture", which requires a Chapter 49 school district to exercise certain options to remit local M&O tax revenues collected in excess of the Chapter 49 school district's funding entitlements to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or otherwise expending the respective M&O tax revenues for the benefit of students in school districts that are not Chapter 49 school districts, as described in the subcaption "Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement". Chapter 49 school districts receive their allocable share of funds distributed from the constitutionally-prescribed Available School Fund, but are generally not eligible to receive State aid under the Foundation School Program, although they may continue to receive State funds for certain competitive grants and certain programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program.

Whereas prior to the 2019 Legislation, the recapture process had been based on the proportion of a school district's assessed property value per student in ADA, recapture is now measured by the "local revenue level" (being the M&O tax revenues generated in a school district) in excess of the entitlements appropriated by the State Legislature each fiscal biennium. Therefore, school districts are now guaranteed that recapture will not reduce revenue below their statutory entitlement. The changes to the wealth transfer provisions are expected to reduce the cumulative amount of recapture payments paid by school districts by approximately $3.6 billion during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium.

Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement

Under Chapter 49, a school district has six options to reduce local revenues to a level that does not exceed the school district's respective entitlements: (1) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated school district; all property and debt of the consolidating school districts vest in the consolidated school district; (2) a school district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor school district; (3) a school district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a school district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor school district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor school districts; (5) a school district may execute an agreement to provide students of one or more other school districts with career and technology education through a program designated as an area program for career and technology education; or (6) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated taxing school district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 49 school district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (6) require prior approval by the Chapter 49 school district's voters.

Furthermore, a school district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective local revenue level is at or below the level that would produce its guaranteed entitlement under the Foundation School Program. If a school district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the school district's local revenue level to the level that would produce the school district's guaranteed entitlement, by detaching certain types of property from the school district and annexing the property to a property-poor school district or, if necessary, consolidate the school district with a property-poor school district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring school district's existing debt.

AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES

The following is a summary of certain provisions of State law as it relates to ad valorem taxation and is not intended to be complete. Reference is made to Title I of the Texas Tax Code, as amended (the "Property Tax Code"), for identification of property subject to ad valorem taxation, property exempt or which may be exempted from ad valorem taxation if claimed, the appraisal of property for ad valorem tax purposes, and the procedures and limitations applicable to the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes.

Valuation of Taxable Property

The Property Tax Code provides for countywide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board (the "Appraisal Review Board") responsible for appraising property for all taxing units within the county. The appraisal of property within the District is the responsibility of the Collin Central Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District"). Except as generally described below, the Appraisal District is required to appraise all property within the Appraisal District on the basis of 100% of its market value and is prohibited from applying any assessment ratios. In determining market value of property, the Appraisal District is required to consider the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and use the method the chief appraiser of the Appraisal District considers most appropriate. The Property Tax Code requires appraisal districts to reappraise all property in its jurisdiction at least once every three (3) years. A taxing unit may require annual review at its own expense, and is entitled to challenge the determination of appraised value of property within the taxing unit by petition filed with the Appraisal Review Board.

State law requires the appraised value of an owner's principal residence ("homestead" or "homesteads") to be based solely on the property's value as a homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a homestead to the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) 110% of the appraised value of the property for the preceding tax year plus the market value of all new improvements to the property.

State law provides that eligible owners of both agricultural land and open-space land, including open-space land devoted to farm or ranch purposes or open-space land devoted to timber production, may elect to have such property appraised for property taxation on the basis of its productive capacity. The same land may not be qualified as both agricultural and open-space land.

The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board. The appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by taxing units, such as the District, in establishing their tax rolls and tax rates (see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – District and Taxpayer Remedies”).

State Mandated Homestead Exemptions

State law grants, with respect to each school district in the State, (1) a $25,000 exemption of the market value of all homesteads, (2) a $10,000 exemption of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled, and (3) various exemptions for disabled veterans and their families, surviving spouses of members of the armed services killed in action and surviving spouses of first responders killed or fatally wounded in the line of duty. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation attributable to state-mandated homestead exemptions.

Local Option Homestead Exemptions

The governing body of a taxing unit, including a city, county, school district, or special district, at its option may grant: (1) an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of all homesteads (but not less than $5,000) and (2) an additional exemption of at least $3,000 of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled. Each taxing unit decides if it will offer the local option homestead exemptions and at what percentage or dollar amount, as applicable. The governing body of a school district may not repeal or reduce the amount of the local option homestead exemption described in (1), above, that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) for a period ending December 31, 2019. The exemption described in (2), above, may also be created, increased, decreased or repealed at an election called by the governing body of a taxing unit upon presentment of a petition for such creation, increase, decrease, or repeal of at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the taxing unit. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation, if any, attributable to local option homestead exemptions.

State Mandated Freeze on School District Taxes

Except for increases attributable to certain improvements, a school district is prohibited from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the homestead of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such homestead qualified for such exemption. This freeze is transferable to a different homestead if a qualifying taxpayer moves and, under certain circumstances, is also transferable to the surviving spouse of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older, but not the disabled. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation attributable to the freeze on taxes for the elderly and disabled.

Personal Property

Tangible personal property (furniture, machinery, supplies, inventories, etc.) used in the “production of income” is taxed based on the property’s market value. Taxable personal property includes income-producing equipment and inventory. Intangibles such as goodwill, accounts receivable, and proprietary processes are not taxable. Tangible personal property not held or used for production of income, such as household goods, automobiles or light trucks, and boats, is exempt from ad valorem taxation unless the governing body of a taxing unit elects to tax such property.

Freeport Exemptions

Certain goods that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded outside the State, and are detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication (“Freeport Property”) are exempt from ad valorem taxation unless a taxing unit took official action to tax Freeport Property before April 1, 1990 and has not subsequently taken official action to exempt Freeport Property. Decisions to continue taxing Freeport Property may be reversed in the future; decisions to exempt Freeport Property are not subject to reversal.

Certain goods, that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded to another location within or without the State, stored in a location that is not owned by the owner of the goods and are transported to another location within or without the State within 175 days (“Goods-in-Transit”), are generally exempt from ad valorem taxation; however, the Property Tax Code permits a taxing unit, on a local option basis, to tax Goods-in-Transit if the taxing unit takes official action, after conducting a public hearing, before January 1 of the first tax year in which the taxing unit proposes to tax Goods-in-Transit. Goods-in-Transit and Freeport Property do not include oil, natural gas or petroleum products, and Goods-in-Transit does not include aircraft or special inventories such as manufactured housing inventory, or a dealer’s motor vehicle, boat, or heavy equipment inventory.

A taxpayer may receive only one of the Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions for items of personal property. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation, if any, attributable to Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions.

Other Exempt Property

Other major categories of exempt property include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if used for public purposes, property exempt by federal law, property used for pollution control, farm products owned by producers, property of nonprofit corporations used for scientific research or educational activities benefitting a college or university, designated historic sites, solar and wind-powered energy devices, and certain classes of intangible personal property.

Tax Increment Reinvestment Zones

A city or county, by petition of the landowners or by action of its governing body, may create one or more tax increment reinvestment zones (“TIRZ”) within its boundaries. At the time of the creation of the TIRZ, a “base value” for the real property in the TIRZ is established and the difference between any increase in the assessed valuation of taxable real property in the TIRZ in excess of the base value is known as the “tax increment”. During the existence of the TIRZ, all or a portion of the taxes levied against the tax increment by a city or county, and all other overlapping taxing units that elected to participate, are restricted to paying only planned project and financing costs within the TIRZ and are not available for the payment of other obligations of such taxing units.

Until September 1, 1999, school districts were able to reduce the value of taxable property reported to the State to reflect any taxable value lost due to TIRZ participation by the school district. The ability of the school district to deduct the taxable value of the tax increment that it contributed prevented the school district from being negatively affected in terms of state school funding. However, due to a change in law, local M&O tax rate revenue contributed to a TIRZ created on or after May 31, 1999 will count toward a school district's Tier One entitlement (reducing Tier One State funds for eligible school districts) and will not be considered in calculating any school district's Tier Two entitlement (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts").

Tax Limitation Agreements

The Texas Economic Development Act (Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code, as amended), allows school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the school district. Generally, during the last eight (8) years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, a school district may only levy and collect M&O taxes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. For the purposes of calculating its Tier One and Tier Two entitlements, the portion of a school district's property that is not fully taxable is excluded from the school district's taxable property values. Therefore, a school district will not be subject to a reduction in Tier One or Tier Two State funds as a result of lost M&O tax revenues due to entering into a tax limitation agreement (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts").

For a discussion of how the various exemptions described above are applied by the District, see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – The Property Tax Code as Applied to the District" herein.

District and Taxpayer Remedies

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal the determinations of the Appraisal District by timely initiating a protest with the Appraisal Review Board. Additionally, taxing units such as the District may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Property Tax Code.

Beginning in the 2020 tax year, owners of certain property with a taxable value in excess of the current year "minimum eligibility amount", as determined by the State Comptroller, and situated in a county with a population of one million or more, may protest the determinations of an appraisal district directly to a three-member special panel of the appraisal review board, appointed by the chairman of the appraisal review board, consisting of highly qualified professionals in the field of property tax appraisal. The minimum eligibility amount is set at $50 million for the 2020 tax year, and is adjusted annually by the State Comptroller to reflect the inflation rate.

The Property Tax Code sets forth notice and hearing procedures for certain tax rate increases by the District and provides for taxpayer referenda that could result in the repeal of certain tax increases (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate"). The Property Tax Code also establishes a procedure for providing notice to property owners of reappraisals reflecting increased property value, appraisals which are higher than renditions, and appraisals of property not previously on an appraisal roll.

Levy and Collection of Taxes

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent, plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. If the tax is not paid by July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent, the tax incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) regardless of the number of months the tax has been delinquent and incurs an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) if imposed by the District. The delinquent tax also accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month it remains unpaid. The Property Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes for certain taxpayers. Furthermore, the District may provide, on a local option basis, for the split payment, partial payment, and discounts for early payment of taxes under certain circumstances.

District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all state and local taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of each taxing unit, including the District, having power to tax the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of such other taxing units. A tax lien on real property takes priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien; however, whether a lien of the United States is on a parity with or takes priority over a tax lien of the District is determined by applicable federal law. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property.

Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, adverse market conditions, taxpayer redemption rights, or bankruptcy proceedings which restrain the collection of a taxpayer's debt.

Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases, post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

M&O Tax Rate Limitations

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters under Section 45.003(d) of the Texas Education Code, as amended. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the next succeeding paragraph.

The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is $1.50 per $100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on March 29, 1973 under Chapter 20, Texas Education Code (now codified as Section 45.003, Texas Education Code).

The 2019 Legislation established the following maximum M&O tax rate per $100 of taxable value that may be adopted by independent school districts, such as the District, for the 2019 and subsequent tax years:

> For the 2019 tax year, the maximum M&O tax rate per $100 of taxable value that may be adopted by a school district is the sum of $0.17 and the product of the State Compression Percentage multiplied by $1.00. For the 2019 tax year, the state compression percentage has been set at 93%.
>
> For the 2020 and subsequent tax years, the maximum maintenance tax rate per $100 of taxable value that may be adopted by an independent school district is the sum of $0.17 and the school district's MCR. The District's MCR is, generally, inversely proportional to the change in taxable property values both within the District and the State, and is subject to recalculation annually. For any year, highest possible MCR for an independent school district is $0.93.

On September 29, 2009, the voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed $1.06 (increasing the maximum maintenance and operations tax from $1.04). A second tax rate election was held on May 21, 2016, at which the District voters approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed $1.17.

Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate without submitting such tax rate to an election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate" herein.

I&S Tax Rate Limitations

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security").

Section 45.0031 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, requires a school district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by voters of a school district at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of $0.50 per $100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued (the "50-cent Test"). In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of $0.50, a school district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the school district, which effectively reduces the school district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the school district. If a school district exercises this option, it may not adopt an I&S tax until it has credited to the school district's I&S fund an amount equal to all State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service and any Tier One funds needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Additionally, a school district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the 50-cent Test by applying the $0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the school district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five (5) years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a school district uses projected future taxable values to meet the 50-cent Test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than $0.50 per $100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the school district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the 50-cent Test from a tax rate of $0.45 per $100 of valuation. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a school district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the 50-cent Test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the 50-cent Test when applied to subsequent bond issues that are subject to the 50-cent Test. The Bonds are issued as refunding bonds pursuant to Chapter 1207 and are, therefore, not subject to the 50-cent Test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on the Bonds are included in the calculation of the 50-cent Test as applied to subsequent issues of "new debt". In connection with prior bond issues, the District has used projected property values to satisfy this threshold test and has also used approximately $1.17 million of Tier One funds in demonstrating compliance with the $0.50 threshold debt service test.

Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate

A school district's total tax rate is the combination of the M&O tax rate and the I&S tax rate. Generally, the highest rate at which a school district may levy taxes for any given year without holding an election to approve the tax rate is the "Voter-Approval Tax Rate", as described below.

For the 2019 tax year, a school district is required to adopt its annual tax rate before the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit being the lower of the "effective tax rate" calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. "Effective tax rate" means the rate that will produce the prior year's total tax levy from the current year's total taxable values, adjusted such that lost values are not included in the calculation of the prior year's taxable values and new values are not included in the current year's taxable values.

For the 2019 tax year, the Voter-Approval Tax Rate for a school district is the sum of (i) the State Compression Percentage, multiplied by $1.00; (ii) the greater of (a) the school district's M&O tax rate for the 2018 tax year, less the sum of (1) $1.00, and (2) any amount by which the school district is required to reduce its Enrichment Tax Rate for the 2019 tax year, or (b) $0.04; and (iii) the school district's I&S tax rate. For the 2019 tax year, a school district's M&O tax rate may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of (i) $0.17 and (ii) the product of the State Compression Percentage multiplied by $1.00.

For the 2019 tax year, a school district with a Voter-Approval Tax Rate equal to or greater than $0.97 (excluding the school district's current I&S tax rate) may not adopt tax rate for the 2019 tax year that exceeds the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate. For the 2019 tax year, the District is not eligible to adopt a tax rate that exceeds its Voter-Approval Tax Rate.

Beginning with the 2020 tax year, a school district is required to adopt its annual tax rate before the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, except that a tax rate that exceeds the Voter-Approval Tax Rate must be adopted not later than the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date. A school district's failure to adopt a tax rate equal to or less than the Voter-Approval Tax Rate by September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll, will result in the tax rate for such school district for the tax year to be the lower of the "no-new-revenue tax rate" calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the school district for the preceding tax year. A school district's failure to adopt a tax rate in excess of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate on or prior to the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date, will result in the school district adopting a tax rate equal to or less than its Voter-Approval Tax Rate by the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll. "No-new-revenue tax rate" means the rate that will produce the prior year's total tax levy from the current year's total taxable values, adjusted such that lost values are not included in the calculation of the prior year's taxable values and new values are not included in the current year's taxable values.

For the 2020 and subsequent tax years, the Voter-Approval Tax Rate for a school district is the sum of (i) the school district's MCR; (ii) the greater of (a) the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate for the preceding year, less any amount by which the school district is required to reduce its current year Enrichment Tax Rate pursuant to Section 48.202(f), Education Code, as amended, or (b) the rate of $0.05 per $100 of taxable value; and (iii) the school district's current I&S tax rate. However, for only the 2020 tax year, if the governing body of the school district does not adopt by unanimous vote an M&O tax rate at least equal to the sum of the school district's MCR plus $0.05, then $0.04 is substituted for $0.05 in the calculation for such school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate for the 2020 tax year. For the 2020 tax year, and subsequent years, a school district's M&O tax rate may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of (i) $0.17 and (ii) the school district's MCR (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" herein, for more information regarding the State Compression Percentage, MCR, and the Enrichment Tax Rate).

Beginning with the 2020 tax year, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate without approval by a majority of the voters approving the higher rate at an election to be held on the next uniform election date. Further, subject to certain exceptions for areas declared disaster areas, State law requires the board of trustees of a school district to conduct an efficiency audit before seeking voter approval to adopt a tax rate exceeding the Voter-Approval Tax Rate and sets certain parameters for conducting and disclosing the results of such efficiency audit. An election is not required for a tax increase to address increased expenditures resulting from certain natural disasters in the year following the year in which such disaster occurs; however, the amount by which the increased tax rate exceeds the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate for such year may not be considered by the school district in the calculation of its subsequent Voter-Approval Tax Rate.

The calculation of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate does not limit or impact the District's ability to set an I&S tax rate in each year sufficient to pay debt service on all of the District's tax-supported debt obligations, including the Bonds.

Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss the school district's budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the school district if the school district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c), (c-1), (c-2), and (d), and, if applicable, subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the school district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A school district that elects to adopt a tax rate before the adoption of a budget for the fiscal year that begins in the current tax year may adopt a tax rate for the current tax year before receipt of the certified appraisal roll, so long as the chief appraiser of the appraisal district in which the school district participates has certified to the assessor for the school district an estimate of the taxable value of property in the school district. If a school district adopts its tax rate prior to the adoption of its budget, both the no-new-revenue tax rate and the Voter-Approval Tax Rate of the school district shall be calculated based on the school district's certified estimate of taxable value. A school district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

Beginning with the 2020 tax year, a school district must annually calculate and prominently post on its internet website, and submit to the county tax assessor-collector for each county in which all or part of the school district is located its Voter-Approval Tax Rate in accordance with forms prescribed by the State Comptroller

THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in the County. The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District collects an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by the Collin County Tax Office.

The District does not allow split payments and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District has not granted any tax abatements.

The District does grant a $4,000 additional local option exemption for those 65 years of age and older. The District does not grant the local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has not taken action to tax goods-in-transit. The District has not granted the freeport exemption.

EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the TRS retirement plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of TRS costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended

June 30, 2018, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see "Note 9 – Defined Benefit Pension Plan" in the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

In addition to its participation in TRS, the District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (the "TRS-Care Retired Plan"), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan. The TRS-Care Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. For more detailed information concerning the District's funding policy and contributions in connection with the TRS-Care Retired Plan, see "Note 11 – School District Retiree Health Plan" in the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

The District generally does not offer any additional post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45.

During the year ended June 30, 2018, employees of the District were covered by a fully-insured health insurance plan (the "Health Care Plan"). The District contributed $225 per month to the cost of each eligible employee to the Plan and employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay the remaining balance of premiums for dependents. See "Note 13 – Health Care Coverage" of the Financial Statements.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

RATING

The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's current unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "AA-" by S&P. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM– Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program" herein).

An explanation of the significance of such rating may be obtained from S&P. The rating of the Bonds by S&P reflects only the views of said company at the time the rating is given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by S&P, if, in the judgment of S&P, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the ratings, or either of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price or marketability of the Bonds.

LEGAL MATTERS

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas, who will deliver its opinion, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel represents the Financial Advisor and purchasers of school district bonds from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, but Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in the issuance of the Bonds. McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. also advises the TEA in connection with its disclosure obligations under the Federal securities laws, but such firm has not passed upon any TEA disclosures contained in this Official Statement. Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of the Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein, except that, in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information describing the Bonds in the Official Statement to verify that such description conforms to the provisions of the Order.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

TAX MATTERS

Opinion

On the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel to the District, will render its opinion that, in accordance with statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof ("Existing Law"), (1) interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes will be excludable from the "gross income" of the holders thereof and (2) the Bonds will not be treated as "specified private activity bonds" the interest on which would be included as an alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Except as stated above, Bond Counsel will express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. See Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.

In rendering its opinion, Bond Counsel will rely upon (a) the District's federal tax certificate and the verification report relating to the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, (b) covenants of the District with respect to arbitrage and the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the Refunded Bonds and the property financed or refinanced therewith, and (c) the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund. Failure by the District to observe the aforementioned representations or covenants could cause the interest on the Bonds to become taxable retroactively to the date of issuance.

The Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder contain a number of requirements that must be satisfied subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds in order for interest on the Bonds to be, and to remain, excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Failure to comply with such requirements may cause interest on the Bonds to be included in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel is conditioned on compliance by the District with such requirements, and Bond Counsel has not been retained to monitor compliance with these requirements subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel's opinion represents its legal judgment based upon its review of Existing Law and the reliance on the aforementioned information, representations and covenants. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result. Existing Law is subject to change by the Congress and to subsequent judicial and administrative interpretation by the courts and the Department of the Treasury. There can be no assurance that Existing Law or the interpretation thereof will not be changed in a manner which would adversely affect the tax treatment of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds.

A ruling was not sought from the Internal Revenue Service by the District with respect to the Bonds or the property financed or refinanced with proceeds of the Bonds or the Refunded Bonds. No assurances can be given as to whether the Internal Revenue Service will commence an audit of the Bonds, or as to whether the Internal Revenue Service would agree with the opinion of Bond Counsel. If an Internal Revenue Service audit is commenced, under current procedures the Internal Revenue Service is likely to treat the District as the taxpayer and the Bondholders may have no right to participate in such procedure. No additional interest will be paid upon any determination of taxability.

Federal Income Tax Accounting Treatment of Original Issue Discount

The initial public offering price to be paid for one or more maturities of the Bonds may be less than the maturity amount thereof or one or more periods for the payment of interest on the Bonds may not be equal to the accrual period or be in excess of one year (the "Original Issue Discount Bonds"). In such event, the difference between (i) the "stated redemption price at maturity" of each Original Issue Discount Bond, and (ii) the initial offering price to the public of such Original Issue Discount Bond would constitute original issue discount. The "stated price at maturity" means the sum of all payments to be made on the Bonds less the amount of all periodic interest payments. Periodic interest payments are payments which are made during equal accrual periods (or during any unequal period if it is the initial or final period) and which are made during accrual periods which do not exceed one year.

Under Existing Law, any owner who has purchased such Original Issue Discount Bond in the initial public offering is entitled to exclude from gross income (as defined in section 61 of the Code) an amount of income with respect to such Original Issue Discount Bond equal to that portion of the amount of such original issue discount allocable to the accrual period. For a discussion of certain collateral federal tax consequences, see the discussion set forth below.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bond prior to stated maturity, however, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Original Issue Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Original Issue Discount Bond was held by such initial owner) is includable in gross income.

Under Existing Law, the original issue discount on each Original Issue Discount Bond is accrued daily to the stated maturity thereof (in amounts calculated as described below for each six-month period ending on the date before the semiannual anniversary dates of the date of the Bonds and ratably within each such six-month period) and the accrued amount is added to an initial owner's basis for such Original Issue Discount Bond for purposes of determining the amount of gain or loss recognized by such owner upon the redemption, sale or other disposition thereof. The amount to be added to basis for each accrual period is equal to (a) the sum of the issue price and the amount of original issue discount accrued in prior periods multiplied by the yield to stated maturity (determined on the basis of compounding at the close of each accrual period and properly adjusted for the length of the accrual period) less (b) the amounts payable as current interest during such accrual period on such Original Issue Discount Bond.

The federal income tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of Original Issue Discount Bonds which are not purchased in the initial offering at the initial offering price may be determined according to rules which differ from those described above. All owners of Original Issue Discount Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal, state and local income tax purposes of the treatment of interest accrued upon redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds and with respect to the federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds.

Collateral Federal Income Tax Consequences

The following discussion is a summary of certain collateral federal income tax consequences resulting from the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. This discussion is based on Existing Law, which is subject to change or modification, retroactively.

The following discussion is applicable to investors, other than those who are subject to special provisions of the Code, such as financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals allowed an earned income credit, certain S corporations with Subchapter C earnings and profits, foreign corporations subject to the branch profits tax, taxpayers qualifying for the health insurance premium assistance credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase tax-exempt obligations.

THE DISCUSSION CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE EXHAUSTIVE. INVESTORS, INCLUDING THOSE WHO ARE SUBJECT TO SPECIAL PROVISIONS OF THE CODE, SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS AS TO THE TAX TREATMENT WHICH MAY BE ANTICIPATED TO RESULT FROM RECENTLY ENACTED LEGISLATION OR THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS BEFORE DETERMINING WHETHER TO PURCHASE THE BONDS.

Under section 6012 of the Code, holders of tax-exempt obligations, such as the Bonds, may be required to disclose interest received or accrued during each taxable year on their returns of federal income taxation.

Section 1276 of the Code provides for ordinary income tax treatment of gain recognized upon the disposition of a tax-exempt obligation, such as the Bonds, if such obligation was acquired at a "market discount" and if the fixed maturity of such obligation is equal to, or exceeds, one year from the date of issue. Such treatment applies to "market discount bonds" to the extent such gain does not exceed the accrued market discount of such bonds; although for this purpose, a de minimis amount of market discount is ignored. A "market discount bond" is one which is acquired by the holder at a purchase price which is less than the stated redemption price at maturity or, in the case of a bond issued at an original issue discount, the "revised issue price" (i.e., the issue price plus accrued original issue discount). The "accrued market discount" is the amount which bears the same ratio to the market discount as the number of days during which the holder holds the obligation bears to the number of days between the acquisition date and the final maturity date.

Future and Proposed Legislation

Tax legislation, administrative actions taken by tax authorities, or court decisions, whether at the Federal or state level, may adversely affect the tax-exempt status of interest on the Bonds under Federal or state law and could affect the market price or marketability of the Bonds. Any such proposal could limit the value of certain deductions and exclusions, including the exclusion for tax-exempt interest. The likelihood of any such proposal being enacted cannot be predicted. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the foregoing matters.

State, Local and Foreign Taxes

Investors should consult their own tax advisors concerning the tax implications of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds under applicable state or local laws. Foreign investors should also consult their own tax advisors regarding the tax consequences unique to investors who are not United States persons.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Subject to certain exceptions, information reports describing interest income, including original issue discount, with respect to the Bonds will be sent to each registered holder and to the Internal Revenue Service. Payments of interest and principal may be subject to backup withholding under section 3406 of the Code if a recipient of the payments fails to furnish to the payor such owner's social security number or other taxpayer identification number ("TIN"), furnishes an incorrect TIN, or otherwise fails to establish an exemption from the backup withholding tax. Any amounts so withheld would be allowed as a credit against the recipient's federal income tax. Special rules apply to partnerships, estates and trusts, and in certain circumstances, and in respect of Non-U.S. Holders, certifications as to foreign status and other matters may be required to be provided by partners and beneficiaries thereof.

Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions

Section 265(a) of the Code provides, in pertinent part, that interest paid or incurred by a taxpayer, including a "financial institution," on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase or carry tax-exempt obligations is not deductible in determining the taxpayer's taxable income. Section 265(b) of the Code provides an exception to the disallowance of such deduction for any interest expense paid or incurred on indebtedness of a taxpayer that is a "financial institution" allocable to tax-exempt obligations, other than "private activity bonds," that are designated by a "qualified small issuer" as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." A "qualified small issuer" is any governmental issuer (together with any "on behalf of" and "subordinate" issuers) who issues no more than $10,000,000 of tax-exempt obligations during the calendar year. Section 265(b)(5) of the Code defines the term "financial institution" as any "bank" described in section 585(a)(2) of the Code, or any person accepting deposits from the public in the ordinary course of such person's trade or business that is subject to federal or state supervision as a financial institution. Notwithstanding the exception to the disallowance of the deduction of interest on indebtedness related to "qualified tax-exempt obligations" provided by section 265(b) of the Code, section 291 of the Code provides that the allowable deduction to a "bank," as defined in section 585(a)(2) of the Code, for interest on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase "qualified tax-exempt obligations" shall be reduced by twenty-percent (20%) as a "financial institution preference item."

The District expects to designate the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" or the Bonds will be deemed designated as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" within the meaning of section 265(b) of the Code. In furtherance of that designation, the District will covenant to take such action that would assure, or to refrain from such action that would adversely affect, the treatment of the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." **Potential purchasers should be aware that if the issue price to the public exceeds $10,000,000, there is a reasonable basis to conclude that the payment of a de minimis amount of premium in excess of $10,000,000 is disregarded; however, the Internal Revenue Service could take a contrary view. If the Internal Revenue Service takes the position that the amount of such premium is not disregarded, then such obligations might fail to satisfy the aforementioned dollar limitation and the Bonds would not be "qualified tax-exempt obligations."**

INVESTMENT POLICIES

Investments

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

Legal Investments

Available District funds are invested as authorized by State law and in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of Trustees. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change. Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in: (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including the Federal Home Loan Banks; (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, including obligations that are fully guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (the "FDIC") or by the explicit full faith and credit of the United States; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed, or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the FDIC or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund (the "NCUSIF") or their respective successors; (8) interest-bearing banking deposits, other than those described in clause (7), that (i) are invested through a broker or institution with a main office or branch office in this state and selected by the District in compliance with the Public Funds Investment Act (Chapter 2256, Government Code) as amended (the "PFIA"), (ii) the broker or institution arranges for the deposit of the funds in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the District's account, (iii) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of the banking deposits is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (iv) the District appoints as its custodian of the banking deposits, in compliance with the PFIA, the institution in clause (8)(i) above, a bank, or a broker-dealer; (9) certificates of deposit and share certificates meeting the requirements of the PFIA (i) that are issued by an institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State and are guaranteed or insured by the FDIC or the NCUSIF, or their respective successors, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (8), above, or secured in accordance with Chapter 2257, Texas Government Code, or in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits, or (ii) where (a) the funds are invested by the District through a broker or institution that has a main office or branch office in the State and selected by the District in compliance with the PFIA, (b) the broker or institution arranges for the deposit of the funds in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District, (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; and (d) the District appoints, in compliance with the PFIA, the institution in clause (9)(ii)(a) above, a bank, or broker-dealer as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; (10) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are secured by a combination of cash and obligations described by clause (1) above, clause (12) below, or, if applicable, which are pledged to the District, held in the District's name, and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (11) certain bankers' acceptances with a stated maturity of 270 days or less, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank, or of the holding company of which the bank is the largest subsidiary, are rated not less than A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with a stated maturity of 365 days or less that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or an equivalent by either (i) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies, or (ii) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the commercial paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a United States or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission and complies with Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7; (14) no-load mutual funds that are registered and regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission that have a weighted maturity of less than two years and either (i) have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations approved in this paragraph, or (ii) have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset backed securities; (15) guaranteed investment contracts that have a defined termination date and are secured by obligations described in clause (1), excluding obligations which the District is explicitly prohibited from investing in, and in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract; and (16) securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, including accrued income, (ii) a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time, (iii) a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent, or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) above, clauses (12) through (14) above, or an authorized investment pool, (iv) the terms of a loan made under the program require that the securities being held as collateral be pledged to the District, held in the District's name, and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party designated by the District, (v) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State, and (vi) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District may invest in such obligations directly or through government investment pools that invest solely in such obligations provided that the pools are rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAAm" or an equivalent by at least one nationally recognized rating service.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

As a school district that qualifies as an "issuer" under Chapter 1371, the District is also authorized to purchase, sell, and invest its funds in corporate bonds, but only if the District has formally amended its investment policy to authorize such investments. Texas law defines "corporate bonds" as senior secured debt obligations issued by a domestic business entity and rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent by a nationally recognized investment rating firm. The term does not include a bond that is convertible into stocks or shares in the entity issuing the bond (or an affiliate or subsidy thereof) or any unsecured debt. Corporate bonds must finally mature not later than 3 years from their date of purchase by the school district. A school district may not (1) invest more than 15% of its monthly average fund balance (excluding bond proceeds, reserves, and other funds held for the payment of debt service) in corporate bonds; or (2) invest more than 25% of the funds invested in corporate bonds in any one domestic business entity (including subsidiaries and affiliates thereof). Corporate bonds held by a school district must be sold if they are at any time downgraded below "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof) or, with respect to a corporate bond rated "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof), such corporate bond is placed on negative credit watch.

Investment Policies

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District, the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups, methods to monitor the market price of investments acquired with public funds, a requirement for settlement of all transactions, except investment pool funds and mutual funds, on a delivery versus payment basis, and procedures to monitor rating changes in investments acquired with public funds and the liquidation of such investments consistent with the PFIA. As an integral part of its investment policy, the District is required to adopt a separate written investment strategy for each of the funds under its control. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under State law, District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, the ending market value and the fully accrued interest during the reporting period of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to:

(a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board.

Additional Provisions

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies; (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution; (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the District to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio, requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards or relates to investment transactions of the entity that are not made through accounts or other contractual arrangements over which the business organization has accepted discretionary investment authority), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in non-money market mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

Current Investments

As of June 30, 2019, the District had approximately $30,754,646 (unaudited) in government investment pools that generally have the characteristics of a money market mutual fund. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities; i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

FINANCIAL ADVISOR

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of their limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATING" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least $1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually and timely notice of specified events to the MSRB. The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the EMMA system at www.emma.msrb.org. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" for a description of the TEA's continuing disclosure undertaking to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually with respect to the Permanent School Fund and the State, as the case may be, and to provide timely notice of certain specified events related to the guarantee, to the MSRB.

Annual Reports

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Appendix A (such information being the "Annual Operating Report"). The District will additionally provide financial statements of the District (the "Financial Statements"), that will be (i) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation and shall be in substantially the form included in Appendix D and (ii) audited, if the District commissions an audit of such Financial Statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. The District will update and provide the Annual Operating Report within six months after the end of each fiscal year and the Financial Statements within 12 months of the end of each fiscal year, in each case beginning with the fiscal year ending in and after 2019. The District may provide the Financial Statements earlier, including at the time it provides its Annual Operating Report, but if the audit of such Financial Statements is not complete within 12 months after any such fiscal year end, then the District shall file unaudited Financial Statements within such 12-month period and audited Financial Statements for the applicable fiscal year, when and if the audit report on such Financial Statements becomes available.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

The District's current fiscal year end is June 30. Accordingly, the Annual Operating Report must be provided by the last day of December in each year, and the Financial Statements must be provided by June 30 of each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

Notice of Certain Events

The District will also provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material; (15) incurrence of a financial obligation of the District, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the District, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the District, any of which reflect financial difficulties In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB. Neither the Bonds nor the Bond Order make any provision for a bond trustee, debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District. For the purposes of the above described event notices (15) and (16), the term "financial obligation" means a (i) debt obligation, (ii) derivative instrument entered into in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation, or (iii) a guarantee of (i) or (ii); provided however, that a "financial obligation" shall not include municipal securities as to which a final official statement (as defined in the Rule) has been provided to the MSRB consistent with the Rule.

Availability of Information

All information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB at www.emma.msrb.org.

Limitations and Amendments

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if (i) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (ii) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent to the amendment or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the registered owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District so amends the agreement, it has agreed to include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under “Annual Reports” an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information and operating data so provided.

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

The District is of the view that during the past five years it has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule. However, for a variety of reasons, including increased disclosure enforcement initiatives of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the District began filing information regarding its authorized but unissued bonds in 2014.

VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS

Public Finance Partners LLC, a firm of independent certified public accountants, will deliver to the District, on or before the settlement date of the Bonds, its verification report indicating that it has verified the mathematical accuracy of (a) the mathematical computations of the adequacy of the cash and the maturing principal of and interest on the Defeasance Securities, to pay, when due or upon early redemption, the principal of, interest on and related call premium requirements, if any, of the Refunded Bonds, and (b) the mathematical computations of yield used by Bond Counsel to support its opinion that interest on the Bonds will be excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Public Finance Partners LLC relied on the accuracy, completeness and reliability of all information provided to it by, and on all decisions and approvals of, the District. In addition, Public Finance Partners LLC has relied on any information provided to it by the District retained advisors, consultants or legal counsel.

LITIGATION

In the opinion of District officials, except as may be described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District. See “NO LITIGATION AND OFFICIAL STATEMENT CERTIFICATION”.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District’s expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District’s actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

WINNING BIDDER

On October 22, 2019, the Bonds were awarded to an investment bank or group of investment banks managed by __________________ (the “Purchaser”). The initial reoffering yields for the Bonds were supplied to the District by the Purchaser. The initial reoffering yields shown on page ii hereof will produce compensation to the Purchaser of approximately $_________.

NO LITIGATION AND OFFICIAL STATEMENT CERTIFICATION

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Initial Bonds, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the District, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the District contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the District and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the District, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the District believes to be reliable and the District has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; (d) except as may be otherwise described in the Official Statement, there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the District, since June 30, 2018, the date of the last financial statements of the District appearing in the Official Statement; and

(e) no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of the date hereof, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds.

CONCLUDING STATEMENT

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer of solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Bond Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Bond Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects.

The Bond Order authorized the Pricing Officer to approve the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Purchaser. This Official Statement will be approved by the Pricing Officer of the District for distribution in accordance with the provisions of the Rule.

/s/

Pricing Officer

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Schedule I - Schedule of Refunded Bonds*

Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2010

Maturities Being Redeemed	Original CUSIP	Principal Amount Outstanding	Interest Rate	Principal Amount Being Refunded	Call Date	Principal Amount Unrefunded
2/15/2032	547160LD1	$ 1,450,000.00	4.250%	$ 1,450,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2033	547160LE9	1,920,000.00	4.250%	1,920,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2034	547160LF6	2,005,000.00	4.375%	2,005,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2035	547160LG4	2,100,000.00	4.375%	2,100,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
		$ 7,475,000.00		$ 7,475,000.00		$ -

**Preliminary, subject to change.*

APPENDIX A

FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Financial Information

ASSESSED VALUATION [1]

2019/20 Total Valuation……		$ 3,291,415,680
Less Exemptions & Deductions [2]:		
State Homestead Exemption	$ 113,448,533	
Over-65 Exemption	17,476,398	
Disabled Exemption	14,402,132	
Local Optional Over-65 Exemption	6,693,320	
Veterans Exemption	873,500	
Surviving Spouse Disabled Veteran Exemption	733,408	
Surviving Spouse Deceased Service Member	335,923	
Solar / Wind Exemption Loss	24,654	
Productivity Loss	82,731,623	
Homestead Cap Loss	27,255,534	
	$ 263,975,025	
2019/20 Net Taxable Valuation ……		$ 3,027,440,655

(1) Certified Values from the Collin Central Appraisal District as of July 2019. The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from $15,000 to $25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES - Residential homestead Exemptions" in the Official Statement.
(2) Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers which totaled $235,239,411 in 2018/19.

VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding [1]		$ 166,105,234
Less: The Refunded Bonds [2]		(7,475,000)
Plus: The Bonds [2]		7,275,000
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds [1] [2]		165,905,234
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of June 30, 2018) [3]		(4,584,875)
Net General Obligation Debt		$ 161,320,359
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation [4]	5.33%	
2019 Population Estimate [5]	20,496	
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	$147,709	
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	$7,871	

(1) Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.
(2) Preliminary, subject to change.
(3) Source: Lovejoy ISD Audited Ending I&S Fund Balance.
(4) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement and "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2018" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's outstanding obligations.
(5) Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Tax Rate	% Collections [4] Current [5]	Total [5]
2006/07	$ 1,177,418,301 [1]	$ 1.6934 [6]	99.26%	100.85%
2007/08	1,355,273,019 [1]	1.4763 [6]	98.78%	99.33%
2008/09	1,482,804,214 [1]	1.5150	98.67%	99.54%
2009/10	1,534,019,182 [1]	1.5350	98.23%	100.38%
2010/11	1,546,929,101 [1]	1.5350	98.22%	100.06%
2011/12	1,584,467,506 [1]	1.5350	98.47%	100.10%
2012/13	1,633,419,633 [1]	1.5350	98.56%	100.11%
2013/14	1,732,217,768 [1]	1.5350	98.65%	99.31%
2014/15	1,929,991,667 [1]	1.5600	98.61%	100.03%
2015/16	2,098,417,140 [1][2]	1.5600	98.30%	99.54%
2016/17	2,341,056,544 [1][2]	1.6700	98.62%	100.19%
2017/18	2,591,641,334 [1][2]	1.6700	98.68%	99.34%
2018/19	2,831,336,784 [1][2]	1.6700	100.00% [8]	100.00% [8]
2019/20	3,027,440,655 [2][3]	1.5684 [7]		

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.
(2) The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from $15,000 to $25,000.
(3) Certified Values from the Collin Central Appraisal District as of July 2019.
(4) Source: Lovejoy ISD Audited Financial Statements.
(5) Source: Excludes penalties and interest.
(6) The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.
(7) The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax from the 2018/19 fiscal year to the 2019/20 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in Official Statement.
(8) Source: Lovejoy ISD Estimate.

TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION [1]

	2015/16	2016/17 [1]	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20 [2]
Maintenance & Operations	$1.0600	$1.1700	$1.1700	$1.1700	$1.0684
Debt Service	$0.5000	$0.5000	$0.5000	$0.5000	$0.5000
Total Tax Rate	$1.5600	$1.6700	$1.6700	$1.6700	$1.5684

(1) On September 29, 2009, the District successfully held a tax ratification election at which the voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed $1.06. A second tax rate election was held on May 21, 2016, at which the District voters approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed $1.17.
(2) The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operations Tax from the 2018/19 fiscal year to the 2019/20 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019.

VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding [1] [2]	Ratio Debt to A.V. [3]
2006/07	$ 1,177,418,301	$ 68,799,996	5.84%
2007/08	1,355,273,019	111,171,900	8.20%
2008/09	1,482,804,214	109,361,900	7.38%
2009/10	1,534,019,182	114,415,234	7.46%
2010/11	1,546,929,101	113,060,238	7.31%
2011/12	1,584,467,506	137,105,471	8.65%
2012/13	1,633,419,633	135,435,471	8.29%
2013/14	1,732,217,768	147,060,471	8.49%
2014/15	1,929,991,667	161,697,131	8.38%
2015/16	2,098,417,140	157,463,766	7.50%
2016/17	2,341,056,544	166,095,234	7.09%
2017/18	2,591,641,334	162,875,234	6.28%
2018/19	2,831,336,784	166,105,234	5.87%
2019/20	3,027,440,655	158,012,326 [4]	5.22%

(1) The Bonds are illustrated on the State of Texas fiscal year end of August 31st, although the District's fiscal year ends June 30th.
(2) Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.
(3) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2018" in Appendix D for more information.
(4) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.

ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
Allen, City of	$ 86,415,000	2.18%	$ 1,883,847
Collin County	392,565,000	2.11%	8,283,122
Collin County Community College District	239,445,000	2.11%	5,052,290
Fairview, Town of	17,100,410	64.85%	11,089,616
Lucas, City of	19,440,994	77.02%	14,973,454
McKinney, City of	254,210,000	0.38%	965,998
Wylie, City of	69,878,500	0.01%	6,988
Total Overlapping Debt [1]			$ 42,255,313
Lovejoy Independent School District [2]			161,320,359
Total Direct & Overlapping Debt [1] [2]			$ 203,575,672
Ratio of Net Direct & Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation		6.72%	
Per Capita Direct & Overlapping Debt		$9,932	

(1) Equals gross debt less self-supporting debt.
(2) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunding Bonds.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

2019/20 Top Ten Taxpayers [1]

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Brockdale Phase 3 LLC	Residential	$ 7,973,568	0.26%
Grayson Collin Electric Co-Op	Electric Utility	7,705,412	0.25%
Liberty Bankers Life Insurance	Financial/Banking	7,259,958	0.24%
Texas Henderson LLC	Developer	3,984,045	0.13%
CBBS Land Holdings LLC	Residential	3,681,416	0.12%
Brandon & Heather Larsen	Personal	3,415,802	0.11%
Kendal Carll	Personal	3,030,769	0.10%
Mehta Sacheen H & Sangini S Living Trust	Personal	3,013,154	0.10%
Karl Williams	Personal	2,957,981	0.10%
Our Country Homes Inc.	Home Builder	2,947,110	0.10%
		$ 45,969,215	1.52%

2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers [2]

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Grayson Collin Electric Co-Op	Electric Utility	$ 7,641,000	0.27%
Liberty Bankers Life Insurance	Financial/Banking	6,421,310	0.23%
Toll Dallas Tx LLC	Home Builder	6,022,786	0.21%
Brandon & Heather Larsen	Personal	3,307,707	0.12%
Texas Henderson LLC	Developer	3,200,554	0.11%
Karl Williams	Personal	2,953,766	0.10%
Our Country Homes Inc.	Home Builder	2,925,550	0.10%
Mehta Sacheen H & Sangini S Living Trust	Personal	2,763,843	0.10%
Calatlantic Homes Of Texas	Home Builder	2,676,236	0.09%
Michael David Moreno	Personal	2,673,069	0.09%
		$ 40,585,821	1.43%

2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers [2]

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Toll Dallas Tx LLC	Home Builder	$ 9,999,776	0.39%
Calatlantic Homes Of Texas	Home Builder	4,932,537	0.19%
Grayson Collin Elec. Co-Op	Electric Utility	4,439,746	0.17%
David & Julie Smithey	Personal	3,984,741	0.15%
Liberty Bankers Life Insurance Co.	Insurance	3,292,675	0.13%
Texas Henderson LLC	Developer	3,161,567	0.12%
Brandon & Heather Larsen	Personal	2,961,064	0.11%
Mehta Sacheen H & Sangini S Living Trust	Personal	2,604,564	0.10%
Eric & Laura Marsh	Personal	2,300,000	0.09%
Nancy Harvard	Personal	2,292,572	0.09%
		$ 39,969,242	1.54%

(1) Source: Collin Central Appraisal District.
(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division and Collin Central Appraisal District.

CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY

Category	2019/20 (1)	% of Total	2018/19 (2)	% of Total	2017/18 (2)	% of Total
Real, Residential, Single-Family	$ 2,959,903,778	89.93%	$ 2,783,388,936	89.92%	$ 2,567,503,113	89.22%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	33,296,513	1.01%	33,803,891	1.09%	30,348,739	1.05%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	27,631,814	0.84%	30,583,737	0.99%	30,010,419	1.04%
Real, Acreage	83,697,259	2.54%	79,967,435	2.58%	80,447,252	2.80%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	85,002,699	2.58%	80,688,945	2.61%	81,916,054	2.85%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	15,531,506	0.47%	12,588,384	0.41%	10,579,881	0.37%
Oil & Gas	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
Utilities	14,597,945	0.44%	13,736,154	0.44%	10,270,524	0.36%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	8,493,201	0.26%	8,376,181	0.27%	7,237,872	0.25%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	173,975	0.01%	196,283	0.01%	212,757	0.01%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	157,760	0.00%	104,827	0.00%	162,339	0.01%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	62,929,230	1.91%	51,810,023	1.67%	59,010,013	2.05%
Total Appraised Value	$ 3,291,415,680	100.00%	$ 3,095,244,796	100.00%	$ 2,877,698,963	100.00%
Less:						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	$ 27,255,534		$ 35,723,163		$ 63,620,871	
Productivity Loss	82,731,623		78,963,042		79,403,632	
Exemptions	153,987,868 (3)		149,221,807 (3)		143,033,126 (3)	
Total Exemptions/Deductions (4)	$ 263,975,025		$ 263,908,012		$ 286,057,629	
Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	$ 3,027,440,655		$ 2,831,336,784		$ 2,591,641,334	

Category	2016/17 (2)	% of Total	2015/16 (2)	% of Total	2014/15 (2)	% of Total
Real, Residential, Single-Family	$ 2,322,704,963	89.36%	$ 2,085,949,048	89.04%	$ 1,885,018,831	88.96%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	27,866,266	1.07%	24,040,097	1.03%	22,582,051	1.07%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	26,941,544	1.04%	23,989,124	1.02%	24,314,775	1.15%
Real, Acreage	74,364,953	2.86%	78,952,769	3.37%	83,098,985	3.92%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	72,314,674	2.78%	62,874,676	2.68%	58,792,945	2.77%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	10,318,787	0.40%	7,291,681	0.31%	9,753,662	0.46%
Oil & Gas	-	0.00%	1,664,264	0.07%	-	0.00%
Utilities	7,245,247	0.28%	5,930,129	0.25%	5,919,420	0.28%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	6,130,533	0.24%	6,009,205	0.26%	6,102,815	0.29%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	228,332	0.01%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	103,018	0.00%	89,856	0.00%	100,118	0.00%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	51,146,304	1.97%	46,024,863	1.96%	23,190,111	1.09%
Total Appraised Value	$ 2,599,364,621	100.00%	$ 2,342,815,712	100.00%	$ 2,118,873,713	100.00%
Less:						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	$ 45,135,630		$ 30,925,537		$ 17,255,823	
Productivity Loss	73,396,649		78,051,153		82,262,768	
Exemptions	139,775,798 (3)		135,421,882 (3)		89,363,455	
Total Exemptions/Deductions (4)	$ 258,308,077		$ 244,398,572		$ 188,882,046	
Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	$ 2,341,056,544		$ 2,098,417,140		$ 1,929,991,667	

(1) Source: Collin Central Appraisal District.
(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.
(3) The Passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from $15,000 to $25,000.
(4) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE [(1)]

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Bonds [(2)]	Less: Refunded Bonds [(3)]	Plus: The Bonds [(3)]	Total [(2) (3)]	Bonds Unpaid At Year End	Percent of Principal Retired
2020	$ 7,742,907.50	$ -	$ 150,000.00	$ 7,892,907.50	$ 158,012,326.05	4.76%
2021	5,060,000.00	-	-	5,060,000.00	152,952,326.05	7.81%
2022	5,265,000.00	-	-	5,265,000.00	147,687,326.05	10.98%
2023	5,485,000.00	-	-	5,485,000.00	142,202,326.05	14.29%
2024	5,710,000.00	-	-	5,710,000.00	136,492,326.05	17.73%
2025	5,950,000.00	-	-	5,950,000.00	130,542,326.05	21.32%
2026	6,190,000.00	-	-	6,190,000.00	124,352,326.05	25.05%
2027	6,425,000.00	-	-	6,425,000.00	117,927,326.05	28.92%
2028	6,650,000.00	-	-	6,650,000.00	111,277,326.05	32.93%
2029	6,865,000.00	-	-	6,865,000.00	104,412,326.05	37.07%
2030	7,085,000.00	-	-	7,085,000.00	97,327,326.05	41.34%
2031	7,310,000.00	-	-	7,310,000.00	90,017,326.05	45.74%
2032	6,670,254.20	1,450,000.00	1,400,000.00	6,620,254.20	83,397,071.85	49.73%
2033	7,354,485.50	1,920,000.00	1,850,000.00	7,284,485.50	76,112,586.35	54.12%
2034	7,671,194.25	2,005,000.00	1,905,000.00	7,571,194.25	68,541,392.10	58.69%
2035	7,967,070.30	2,100,000.00	1,970,000.00	7,837,070.30	60,704,321.80	63.41%
2036	6,663,544.25			6,663,544.25	54,040,777.55	67.43%
2037	6,817,225.20			6,817,225.20	47,223,552.35	71.54%
2038	6,990,350.15			6,990,350.15	40,233,202.20	75.75%
2039	5,829,170.70			5,829,170.70	34,404,031.50	79.26%
2040	7,209,031.50			7,209,031.50	27,195,000.00	83.61%
2041	9,590,000.00			9,590,000.00	17,605,000.00	89.39%
2042	9,995,000.00			9,995,000.00	7,610,000.00	95.41%
2043	2,855,000.00			2,855,000.00	4,755,000.00	97.13%
2044	2,990,000.00			2,990,000.00	1,765,000.00	98.94%
2045	1,765,000.00			1,765,000.00	-	100.00%
Total	$166,105,233.55	$ 7,475,000.00	$ 7,275,000.00	$165,905,233.55		

(1) The Bonds are illustrated on the State of Texas fiscal year end of August 31st, although the District's fiscal year ends June 30th.

(2) Excludes the accreted value on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

(3) Preliminary, subject to change.

DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS [1]

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service [2]	Less: Refunded Debt Service	Plus: The Bonds [3] Principal	Interest	Total	Combined Total [2] [3] [4]
2020	$ 13,886,883.78	$ 322,818.76	$ 150,000.00	$ 169,925.00	$ 319,925.00	$ 13,883,990.02
2021	10,919,558.78	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,810,490.02
2022	10,915,858.78	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,806,790.02
2023	10,917,758.78	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,808,690.02
2024	10,914,546.28	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,805,477.52
2025	10,915,946.28	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,806,877.52
2026	10,918,990.03	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,809,921.27
2027	10,918,761.90	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,809,693.14
2028	10,918,838.77	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,809,770.01
2029	10,917,690.64	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,808,621.88
2030	10,916,612.51	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,807,543.75
2031	10,918,937.51	322,818.76	-	213,750.00	213,750.00	10,809,868.75
2032	10,915,818.76	1,742,006.26	1,400,000.00	192,750.00	1,592,750.00	10,766,562.50
2033	10,915,381.26	2,140,393.76	1,850,000.00	144,000.00	1,994,000.00	10,768,987.50
2034	10,915,584.38	2,140,734.38	1,905,000.00	87,675.00	1,992,675.00	10,767,525.00
2035	10,914,575.00	2,145,937.50	1,970,000.00	29,550.00	1,999,550.00	10,768,187.50
2036	10,918,750.00					10,918,750.00
2037	10,917,065.63					10,917,065.63
2038	10,914,909.38					10,914,909.38
2039	10,916,825.00					10,916,825.00
2040	10,544,250.00					10,544,250.00
2041	10,546,025.00					10,546,025.00
2042	10,544,325.00					10,544,325.00
2043	3,131,575.00					3,131,575.00
2044	3,133,100.00					3,133,100.00
2045	1,802,400.00					1,802,400.00
	$ 261,010,968.45	$ 12,042,897.02	$ 7,275,000.00	$ 2,975,150.00	$ 10,250,150.00	$ 259,218,221.43

(1) Debt service for the Bonds is illustrated on the State of Texas fiscal year end of August 31st, although the District's fiscal year ends on June 30th.
(2) Includes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds.
(3) Preliminary, subject to change.
(4) Based on its wealth per student, the District does not expect to receive Instructional Facilities Allotment nor Existing Debt Allotment state financial assistance for the payment of debt service for the fiscal year 2019/20. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement [1]	$	13,883,990.02
Projected State Financial Assistance for Hold Harmless of Increased Homestead Exemption [2]		170,000.00
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement	$	13,713,990.02
$0.46223 Tax Rate @ 98% Collections Produces	$	13,713,990.05
2019/20 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	$	3,027,440,655

(1) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.
(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement. The District will not receive any Instructional Facilities Allotment nor Existing Debt Allotment state aid in 2019/20, but will receive additional state aid for the increase in the homestead exemption which took effect in 2015/16.

AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS

Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District will have $14,500,000 of authorized but unissued ad valorem tax bonds from the May 10, 2014 bond election. The District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES (1)

	Fiscal Year Ended June 30				
	2014	**2015**	**2016**	**2017**	**2018**
Beginning Fund Balance	**$ 9,631,373**	**$ 8,418,436**	**$ 8,986,091**	**$ 8,386,494**	**$ 9,598,825**
Revenues:					
Local and Intermediate Sources	$ 18,798,905	$ 21,478,249	$ 22,666,209	$ 27,319,086	$ 29,955,083
State Sources	14,946,277	14,003,137	13,833,851	13,368,015	10,694,529
Federal Sources & Other	81,897	190,296	136,435	235,829	250,608
Total Revenues	**$ 33,827,079**	**$ 35,671,682**	**$ 36,636,495**	**$ 40,922,930**	**$ 40,900,220**
Expenditures:					
Instruction	$ 20,192,073	$ 20,157,976	$ 21,212,062	$ 22,374,154	$ 23,071,102
Instructional Resources & Media Services	788,874	622,594	656,068	728,935	749,194
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	1,103,282	1,316,115	1,362,004	1,660,454	1,457,643
Instructional Leadership	376,615	373,954	488,362	499,907	439,038
School Leadership	2,448,192	2,330,558	2,422,946	2,413,254	2,643,358
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	1,287,173	1,298,147	1,398,494	1,485,482	1,674,613
Health Services	382,766	398,703	409,952	429,925	420,885
Student (Pupil) Transportation	893,693	973,825	976,578	1,038,194	1,259,714
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	1,564,956	1,455,090	1,478,175	1,593,624	1,770,152
General Administration	1,384,292	1,488,390	1,614,843	1,899,640	1,773,990
Plant Maintenance and Operations	3,491,013	3,745,588	3,752,876	3,890,197	3,885,154
Security and Monitoring Services	104,784	75,372	102,124	103,710	127,095
Data Processing Services	777,550	651,040	689,038	664,153	651,140
Community Services	60,060	49,805	56,594	53,640	269,896
Payments to Instructional Services Between Schools	-	-	-	608,024	766,070
Payments to Shared Service Arrangements	12,400	12,400	13,270	14,470	14,477
Other Intergovernmental Charges	172,293	177,889	195,330	249,585	285,522
Total Expenditures	**$ 35,040,016**	**$ 35,127,446**	**$ 36,828,716**	**$ 39,707,348**	**$ 41,259,043**
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues					
over Expenditures	$ (1,212,937)	$ 544,236	$ (192,221)	$ 1,215,582	$ (358,823)
Other Resources and (Uses):					
Sale of Real or Personal Property	$ -	$ 23,419	$ 1,199,825	$ -	$ -
Transfer Out	-	-	(1,607,201)	(3,251)	-
Total Other Resources (Uses)	**$ -**	**$ 23,419**	**$ (407,376)**	**$ (3,251)**	**$ -**
Excess (Deficiency) of					
Revenues and Other Sources					
over Expenditures and Other Uses	$ (1,212,937)	$ 567,655	$ (599,597)	$ 1,212,331	$ (358,823)
Ending Fund Balance (2)	**$ 8,418,436**	**$ 8,986,091**	**$ 8,386,494**	**$ 9,598,825**	**$ 9,240,002**

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2019/20 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition" in the Official Statement.
(2) The District is expecting the 2019 Ending General Fund Balance to be approximately $9,300,000.

CHANGE IN NET ASSETS [1]

	Fiscal Year Ended June 30				
	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
Revenues:					
Program Revenues:					
Charges for Services	$ 3,680,051	$ 5,144,311	$ 5,315,400	$ 3,785,277	$ 3,571,149
Operating Grants and Contributions	2,667,415	2,792,108	3,566,169	6,582,679	(1,114,233)
General Revenues:					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	18,097,936	19,879,026	21,574,376	25,359,896	28,139,485
Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service	8,106,269	9,366,567	10,164,910	10,838,339	12,031,648
State Aid - Formula Grants	13,321,925	12,303,928	12,015,689	11,434,965	8,621,061
Grants and Contributions Not Restricted	432,120	675,508	-	-	-
Investment Earnings	21,991	32,086	103,695	205,534	423,827
Miscellaneous	836	25,644	1,742	876	191,375
Transfer In (Out)	-	178,809	-	-	-
Gain on Sale of Assets	-	-	729,158	-	-
Total Revenue	$ 46,328,543	$ 50,397,987	$ 53,471,139	$ 58,207,566	$ 51,864,312
Expenses:					
Instruction	$ 23,199,215	$ 23,059,803	$ 25,275,147	$ 26,426,091	$ 18,941,941
Instruction Resources & Media Services	871,545	802,000	729,825	811,264	636,161
Curriculum & Staff Development	1,231,694	1,431,947	1,577,110	1,894,654	1,228,607
Instructional Leadership	413,742	468,515	621,017	651,746	356,966
School Leadership	2,733,842	2,584,929	2,743,576	2,741,085	2,073,043
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	1,439,365	1,437,732	1,582,485	1,700,985	1,336,429
Health Services	427,421	442,320	463,394	487,220	339,103
Student Transportation	980,908	1,028,249	1,063,459	1,260,756	984,195
Food Service	1,734,697	1,695,616	1,918,708	1,939,306	1,833,963
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	2,533,295	3,194,936	3,469,820	3,809,243	3,329,297
General Administration	1,525,265	1,629,335	1,786,023	2,124,184	1,515,250
Plant Maintenance & Operations	3,682,130	3,930,766	3,990,727	4,089,832	3,740,641
Security and Monitoring Services	104,784	75,372	102,612	104,438	127,095
Data Processing Services	832,376	692,107	731,735	711,105	591,265
Community Services	799,053	845,497	1,013,442	1,028,563	998,495
Debt Service - Interest on Long-term Debt	6,035,791	6,114,909	6,014,238	6,132,329	5,593,946
Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	105,635	69,514	-	221,445	89,800
Other Intergovernmental Charges	204,402	177,889	195,330	249,585	285,522
Capital Outlay	2,091,404	943,755	1,334,827	1,300,109	1,702,632
Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	12,400	-	13,270	-	14,477
Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	-	12,400	-	608,024	766,070
Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	-	-	-	14,470	-
Total Expenditures	$ 50,958,964	$ 50,637,591	$ 54,626,745	$ 58,306,434	$ 46,484,898
Change in Net Assets	$ (4,630,421)	$ (239,604)	$ (1,155,606)	$ (98,868)	$ 5,379,414
Beginning Net Assets	$ 1,591,178	$ (3,039,243)	$ (8,856,537)	$ (10,012,143)	$ (10,111,011)
Prior Period Adjustment	$ -	$ (5,577,690) [2]	$ -	$ -	$ (26,194,870) [3]
Ending Net Assets	$ (3,039,243)	$ (8,856,537)	$ (10,012,143)	$ (10,111,011)	$ (30,926,467)

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34.
(2) In 2015 the District implemented GASB Statement Number 68, which changed the accounting for pensions.
(3) In accordance with the adoption of GASB No. 75 in 2017/18, the District must record its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability related to its contributions to TRS-Care Cost-sharing other than pension plan at the beginning of the measurement period ending August 31, 2017. See "Notes to the Financial Statement" in Appendix D hereto for more information.

APPENDIX B

GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT AND ITS ECONOMY

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

General and Economic Information

The Lovejoy Independent School District is located three miles east of Allen and about 25 miles north of Dallas in the fast developing region of central Collin County. The District includes portions of the cities of Allen and Fairview and covers an area of approximately 19 square miles, bound by Plano ISD on the south, Allen ISD on the west, and McKinney ISD on the north. The District's current estimated population is 20,496.

Collin County (the "County") was created in 1846 and is located in Northeast Texas immediately north and adjacent to Dallas County and approximately 15 miles from downtown Dallas.

Source: Texas Municipal Report for Lovejoy ISD and Collin County.

Enrollment Statistics

Year Ending 6/30	Enrollment*
2007	2,019
2008	2,501
2009	2,873
2010	3,225
2011	3,388
2012	3,540
2013	3,650
2014	3,813
2015	3,802
2016	3,920
2017	4,096
2018	4,215
2019	4,325
Current	4,356

**Enrollment figures reported as of the end of the school year*

District Staff

Teachers	306
Auxiliary Personnel	192
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	70
Administrators	24
Other	60
	652

Facilities

Campus	Grades	Current Enrollment	Capacity	Year Built	Year of Addition/ Renovation
Hart Elementary	K - 4	470	600	2000	2008/2009
Lovejoy Elementary	K - 4	380	600	1984	2008/2009
Puster Elementary	K - 4	438	650	2008	NA
Sloan Creek Intermediate	5 - 6	705	850	2008	NA
Willow Springs Middle School	7 - 8	753	850	2013	NA
Lovejoy High School	9 - 12	1,610	1,500	2006	2010/2018

Principal Employers within the City of Allen

Name of Company	Type of Business	Number of Employees
Allen ISD	Education	2,402
Village at Allen	Retail	2,174
City of Allen	Municipal Government	840
Allen Premium Outlets	Retail	800
Frontier Communications	Telecommunications Services	800
Presbyterian Hospital	Hospital	670
Experian	National Data Center	619
PFS Web	eCommerce Solutions	450
Jack Henry & Associates	Financial Software Development	422
Andrews Distributing	Beverage Distribution	400
Market Street	Retail	400

Source: http://external.oncor.com/CP/App/Index.html#/City/2

Unemployment Rates

	July 2017	July 2018	July 2019
Collin County	3.7%	3.4%	3.1%
State of Texas	4.5%	4.0%	3.6%

Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

APPENDIX C

FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL

(Date of Delivery of Bonds)

Proposed Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel

An opinion in substantially the following form will be delivered by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel, upon the delivery of the Bonds, assuming no material changes in facts or law.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

IN THE AGGREGATE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF $7,275,000

AS BOND COUNSEL for the Lovejoy Independent School District (the "*Issuer*"), the issuer of the Bonds described above (the "*Bonds*"), we have examined into the legality and validity of the Bonds, which bear interest from the dates specified in the text of the Bonds, at the rates and payable on the dates as stated in the text of the Bonds, maturing, unless redeemed prior to maturity in accordance with the terms of the Bonds, all in accordance with the terms and conditions stated in the text of the Bonds.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent provisions of the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and a transcript of certified proceedings of the Issuer, and other pertinent instruments authorizing and relating to the issuance of the Bonds, including the executed Bond Numbered T-1.

BASED ON SAID EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Bonds have been authorized and issued and the Bonds delivered concurrently with this opinion have been duly delivered and that, assuming due authentication, Bonds issued in exchange therefore will have been duly delivered, in accordance with law, and that the Bonds, except as may be limited by laws applicable to the Issuer relating to principles of sovereign immunity, bankruptcy, reorganization and other similar matters affecting creditors' rights generally, and by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion, constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer, and ad valorem taxes sufficient to provide for the payment of the interest on and principal of the Bonds have been levied and pledged for such purpose, without limit as to rate or amount.

600 Congress Ave.
Suite 1800
Austin, Texas 78701
T 512.478.3805
F 512.472.0871

717 North Harwood
Suite 900
Dallas, Texas 75201
T 214.754.9200
F 214.754.9250

Two Allen Center
1200 Smith Street, Suite 1550
Houston, Texas 77002
T 713.980.0500
F 713.980.0510

700 N. St. Mary's Street
Suite 1525
San Antonio, Texas 78205
T 210.225.2800
F 210.225.2984

www.mphlegal.com

IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION, except as discussed below, that the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners for federal income tax purposes under the statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions existing on the date of this opinion. We are further of the opinion that the Bonds are not "specified private activity bonds" and that, accordingly, interest on the Bonds will not be included as an individual or corporate alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Except as stated above, we express no opinion as to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences of acquiring, carrying, owning, or disposing of the Bonds, including the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. Owners of the Bonds should consult their tax advisors regarding the applicability of any collateral tax consequences of owning the Bonds.

IN EXPRESSING THE AFOREMENTIONED OPINIONS, we have relied on and assume continuing compliance with, certain representations contained in the federal tax certificate of the Issuer and covenants set forth in the order adopted by the Issuer to authorize the issuance of the Bonds, relating to, among other matters, the use of the project being refinanced and the investment and expenditure of the proceeds and certain other amounts used to pay or to secure the payment of debt service on the Bonds, the report of Public Finance Partners LLC as to the sufficiency of the amounts initially deposited to the to the escrow fund to pay the redemption price of the refunded bonds, and the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund, the accuracy of which we have not independently verified. We call your attention to the fact that if such representations are determined to be inaccurate or if the Issuer fails to comply with such covenants, interest on the Bonds may become includable in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds.

WE EXPRESS NO OPINION as to any insurance policies issued with respect to the payments due for the principal of and interest on the Bonds, nor as to any such insurance policies issued in the future.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (the "Service"); rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above that we deem relevant to such opinions. The Service has an ongoing audit program to determine compliance with rules that relate to whether interest on state or local obligations is includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. No assurance can be given whether or not the Service will commence an audit of the Bonds. If an audit is commenced, in accordance with its current published procedures the Service is likely to treat the Issuer as the taxpayer. We observe that the Issuer has covenanted not to take any action, or omit to take any action within its control, that if taken or omitted, respectively, may result in the treatment of interest on the Bonds as includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

OUR SOLE ENGAGEMENT in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is as Bond Counsel for the Issuer, and, in that capacity, we have been engaged by the Issuer for the sole purpose of rendering our opinions with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and with respect to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes, and for no other reason or purpose. The foregoing opinions represent our legal judgment based upon a review of existing legal authorities that we deem relevant to render such opinions and are not a guarantee of a result. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer, or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds, and have not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the marketability of the Bonds and have relied solely on certificates executed by officials of the Issuer as to the current outstanding indebtedness of, and assessed valuation of taxable property within the Issuer. Our role in connection with the Issuer's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

Respectfully,

APPENDIX D

AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT
FISCAL YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT FOR THE

YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

This page left blank intentionally.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

This page left blank intentionally.

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Lovejoy Independent School District	Collin	043-919
Name of School District	County	Co. - Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above-named school district were reviewed and (check one) ✓ approved _____ disapproved for the year ended June 30, 2018, at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 17th day of October, 2018.

Signature of Board Secretary

Signature of Board President

This page left blank intentionally.

Members:
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS
TEXAS SOCIETY OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

HANKINS, EASTUP, DEATON, TONN & SEAY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

902 NORTH LOCUST
P.O. BOX 977
DENTON, TX 76202-0977

TEL. (940) 387-8563
FAX (940) 383-4746

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Trustees
Lovejoy Independent School District
Allen, Texas 75002

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Lovejoy Independent School District (the District), as of and for the year ended June 30, 2018, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. This includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standard* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Lovejoy Independent School District as of June 30, 2018, and the respective changes in financial position and the respective budgetary comparison for the General Fund for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Emphasis of Matter

As discussed in Notes 10 and 22 to the financial statements, in 2018, the District adopted new accounting guidance prescribed by GASB #75 for its other post-employment benefit (OPEB) plan – a multiple-employer, cost-sharing, defined benefit OPEB plan that has a special funding situation. Because GASB #75 implements new measurement criteria and reporting provisions, significant information has been added to the Government Wide Statements. Exhibit A-1 discloses the District's Net OPEB Liability and some deferred resource outflows and deferred resource inflows related to the District's OPEB plan. Exhibit B-1 discloses the adjustment to the District's Beginning Net Positions. Our opinion is not modified with respect to the matter.

Other Matters

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the *management's discussion and analysis* on pages 7 through 13 and the Teacher Retirement System schedules on pages 62 and 65 be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise Lovejoy Independent School District's basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the required TEA schedules listed in the table of contents are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the required TEA schedules are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the required TEA schedules are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards*

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards,* we have also issued our report dated October 17, 2018 on our consideration of Lovejoy Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and on our test of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering Lovejoy Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, PC
Denton, Texas

October 17, 2018

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018
(UNAUDITED)

As management of Lovejoy Independent School District, we offer readers of the District's financial statement this narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities of the District for the year ended June 30, 2018. Please read this narrative in conjunction with the independent auditors' report on page 5, and the District's Basic Financial Statements that begin on page 16.

FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

- The liabilities and deferred inflows of Lovejoy Independent School District exceeded its assets and deferred outflows at the close of the most recent fiscal year resulting in a negative net position of $30,926,467.

- The District's total net position increased by $5,379,414 during the fiscal year from the result of current year operations. However, total net position decreased by $26,194,870 due to new standards that required recording of the District's proportionate share of the Teacher Retirement System's net OPEB liability.

- As of the close of the current fiscal period, the District's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of $27,080,782, a decrease of $8,616,091 for the year. Over 27% of this total amount ($7,314,002) is unassigned and available for use within the District's commitments and policies.

- At the end of the current fiscal period, unassigned fund balance for the general fund of $7,314,002 was 17.73% of the total general fund expenditures.

OVERVIEW OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

This discussion and analysis are intended to serve as an introduction to the District's basic financial statements. The District's basic financial statements comprise three components: 1) government-wide financial statements, 2) fund financial statements, and 3) notes to the financial statements. This report also contains other supplementary information in addition to the basic financial statements themselves. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 16 and 17). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise.

Fund financial statements (starting on page 18) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the District. The District has no component units for which it is financially accountable.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 29) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The combining statements for nonmajor funds contain even more information about the District's individual funds. The section labeled Federal Awards Section contains data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

Reporting the District as a Whole

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations begins on page 16. Its primary purpose is to show whether the financial position of the District is improving or deteriorating as a result of the year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets, deferred outflows, deferred inflows and liabilities at the end of the year while the Statement of Activities includes all revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year. These apply the accrual basis of accounting (the basis used by private sector companies).

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as tuition received from students from outside the district and grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist children with disabilities or from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. Liabilities are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in it. The District's net position provides one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position are one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall health of the District, however, you should consider nonfinancial factors as well, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.

All of the District's basic services are reported as governmental activities, including the instruction, counseling, co-curricular activities, food services, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these activities.

Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds

Fund Financial Statements

A *fund* is a grouping of related accounts that is used to maintain control over resources that have been segregated for specific activities or objectives.

The fund financial statements begin on page 18 and provide detailed information about the most significant funds–not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the No Child Left Behind Act from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes (like campus activities).

All of the funds of the District can be divided into two categories: governmental funds and fiduciary funds.

- ***Governmental funds.*** *Governmental funds* are used to account for essentially the same functions reported as *governmental activities* in the government-wide financial statements. However, unlike the government-wide financial statements, governmental fund financial statements focus on *near-term inflows and outflows of spendable resources,* as well as on *balances of spendable resources* available at the end of the fiscal year. Such information may be useful in evaluating a government's near-term financing requirements. Because the focus of governmental funds is narrower than that of the government-wide financial statements, it is useful to compare the information presented for *governmental funds* with similar information presented for *governmental activities* in the government-wide financial statements. By doing so, readers may better understand the long-term impact of the government's near-term financing decisions. Both the governmental fund balance sheet and the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances provide a reconciliation to facilitate this comparison between *governmental funds* and *governmental activities*. The District maintains twenty-two governmental funds. Information is presented separately in the governmental fund balance sheet and in the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances for the general fund, debt service fund, and capital projects fund, each of which are considered to be major funds. Data from the other nineteen governmental funds are combined into a single, aggregated presentation. Individual fund data for each of these nonmajor governmental funds is provided in the form of *combining statements* elsewhere in this report. The District adopts an annual appropriated budget for its general fund, debt service fund and food service fund. A budgetary comparison schedule has been provided to demonstrate compliance with these budgets. The basic governmental fund financial statements can be found on pages 18 through 25 of this report.

- ***Fiduciary funds.*** *Fiduciary funds* are used to account for resources held for the benefit of parties outside the government. Fiduciary funds are *not* reflected in the government-wide financial statements because the resources of those funds are *not* available to support the District's own programs. The District is the trustee, or *fiduciary*, for these funds and is responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in a separate statement of fiduciary net position that can be found on page 26. These activities are excluded from the District's government-wide financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations.

GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

The following analysis presents both current and prior year data and discuss significant changes in the accounts. Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table I) and changes in net position (Table II) of the District's governmental activities.

Governmental Activities

Net Position. The net position of the District's governmental activities at June 30, 2018 was a $30,926,467 deficit. Investment in capital assets (e.g. land, building, furniture, vehicles and equipment) less any related debt used to acquire those assets that is still outstanding was a deficit of $13,753,512 at June 30, 2018. The District uses these capital assets to provide services to students; consequently, these assets are not available for future spending. Although the District's investment in its capital assets are reported net of related debt, it should be noted that the resources needed to repay this debt must be provided from other sources, since the capital assets themselves cannot be used to liquidate these liabilities. An additional portion of the District's governmental activities net position ($4,959,414) represents resources that are subject to external restrictions on how they may be used. There was no unrestricted net position at June 30, 2018.

Changes in Net Position. The District's total revenues of its governmental activities were $51,864,312. A significant portion, approximately 77.4 percent, of the revenue comes from property taxes. Another 16.6 percent comes from state aid - formula grants while only 6.9 percent relates to charges for services. This reflects a $6.3 million decrease in revenues from 2016-2017, with increases in most revenue categories. The total revenues were used to fund the cost of all programs and services in the amount of $46,484,898, and to pay down the District's debt. This reflects an $11.8 million decrease in expenditures from 2016-2017, or approximately 20.3%.

Governmental Activities. Funding for governmental activities is by specific program revenue or through general revenues such as property taxes, state aid and investment earnings. Program revenues directly attributable to specific activities funded some of the governmental activities costs. These program revenues amounted to $2,456,916 (grant revenues, tuition and facility leasing, for example). The remaining cost of governmental activities not directly funded by program revenues was $44,027,982, which were primarily funded by property taxes in the amount of $40,171,133 and state revenue of $8,621,061.

Table I
NET POSITION

	Governmental Activities June 30, 2017	Governmental Activities June 30, 2018	Difference
Current and other assets	$ 40,426,767	$ 32,001,936	$ (8,424,831)
Capital assets	139,733,776	143,165,847	3,432,071
Total assets	180,160,543	175,167,783	(4,992,760)
Deferred outflows of resources	9,595,023	9,333,693	(261,330)
Total assets and deferred outflows of resources	189,755,566	184,501,476	(5,254,090)
Long-term liabilities	191,635,223	199,994,531	8,359,308
Other liabilities	6,590,883	6,480,856	(110,027)
Total liabilities	198,226,106	206,475,387	8,249,281
Deferred inflows of resources	1,640,471	8,952,556	7,312,085
Total liabilities and deferred inflows of resources	199,866,577	215,427,943	15,561,366
Net Position:			
Net investments in capital assets	(16,839,767)	(13,753,512)	3,086,255
Restricted	7,317,138	4,959,414	(2,357,724)
Unrestricted	(588,382)	(22,132,369)	(21,543,987)
Total Net Position	$(10,111,011)	$(30,926,467)	$(20,815,456)

Table II
CHANGES IN NET POSITION

	Governmental Activities Year Ended June 30, 2017	Governmental Activities Year Ended June 30, 2018	Difference
Revenues:			
Program Revenues:			
Charges for services	$ 3,785,277	$ 3,571,149	$ (214,128)
Operating grants and contributions	6,582,679	(1,114,233)	(7,696,912)
General Revenues:			
Maintenance and operations taxes	25,359,896	28,139,485	2,779,589
Debt service taxes	10,838,339	12,031,648	1,193,309
State aid	11,434,965	8,621,061	(2,813,904)
Investment earnings	205,534	423,827	218,293
Miscellaneous	876	191,375	190,499
Total Revenue	58,207,566	51,864,312	(6,343,254)
Expenses:			
Instruction, curriculum and media services	29,132,009	20,806,709	(8,325,300)
Instructional and school leadership	3,392,831	2,430,009	(962,822)
Student support services	3,448,961	2,659,727	(789,234)
Child nutrition	1,939,306	1,833,963	(105,343)
Cocurricular activities	3,809,243	3,329,297	(479,946)
General administration	2,124,184	1,515,250	(608,934)
Plant maintenance, security and data processing	4,905,375	4,459,001	(446,374)
Community services	1,028,563	998,495	(30,068)
Debt services	6,353,774	5,683,746	(670,028)
Capital outlay	1,300,109	1,702,632	402,523
Intergovernmental charges	872,079	1,066,069	193,990
Total Expenses	58,306,434	46,484,898	(11,821,536)
Increase (Decrease) in Net Position	(98,868)	5,379,414	5,478,282
Net Position - beginning of period	(10,012,143)	(10,111,011)	(98,868)
Prior period adjustment	-	(26,194,870)	(26,194,870)
Net Position - end of period	$(10,111,011)	$(30,926,467)	$(20,815,456)

Implementation of GASB 75 was effective at the beginning of the 2018 fiscal year. Changes for revenues and expenses in the prior fiscal year relating to the implementation have not been calculated and are not available for comparison.

The dramatic change in operating grants and contributions activity from year to year of $7,696,912 is reflective of a negative adjustment brought about by the implementation of the new OPEB standards promulgated by the Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB) and significant changes in the benefits provided by the TRS retiree healthcare plan (TRS-Care). The reduction in plan benefits resulted in a sizable decrease in the District's Net OPEB Liability and a resulting negative OPEB expense in accordance with newly implemented accounting standards. Under these standards, the District is required to report what is essentially both negative on-behalf expenses and negative on-behalf revenues for the portion of the reduction in the OPEB liability that is the responsibility of the State, or $8,338,115.

THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

As noted earlier, the District uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements, bond covenants, and segregation for particular purposes.

As of the end of the current fiscal year, the District's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of $27,080,782, a decrease of $8,616,091. Approximately 81 percent of this total amount ($22,066,124) constitutes *committed, assigned and unassigned fund balance*, which is available for spending at the District's discretion. The remainder of fund balance is *nonspendable or restricted* to indicate that it is not available for new spending because it is already restricted to pay debt service ($4,584,875), or for food service ($374,539), or already spent on inventories ($55,244).

The general fund is the primary operating fund of the District. At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance of the general fund was $7,314,002, while the total fund balance was $9,240,002. As a measure of the general fund's liquidity, it may be useful to compare both unassigned fund balance and total fund balance to the total fund expenditures. Unassigned fund balance represents 17.73 percent of the total general fund expenditures, while the total fund balance represents 22.40 percent of that same amount.

The fund balance of the District's general fund decreased by $358,823 during the current fiscal year, compared to a $1,212,331 increase in the previous year. Key factors related to this change are as follows:

- A $2,700,835 increase in property tax revenues combined with a $2,673,486 decrease in the state foundation and per capita funding contributed to a $22,710 overall decrease in total revenues. However, expenditures increased $1,551,695 or 3.91% compared to the prior year.

The debt service fund has a total fund balance of $4,584,875, all of which is reserved for the payment of debt service. The net decrease in fund balance during the period in the debt service fund was $2,409,796, compared to a $1,449,689 increase in the previous year. Tax revenues were $1,167,180 higher than the previous year but debt service expenditures were $2,871,379 higher.

Other changes in fund balances should also be noted. The fund balance in the capital projects fund increased by $6,090,215 due primarily to $3,500,000 of bond sale proceeds offset by $9,793,304 spent on construction-related costs. Although these and other capital expenditures reduce available fund balances, they create new assets for the District as reported in the Statement of Net Position and discussed in Note 5 to the financial statements.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees revised the District's budget four times. These budget amendments fall into three categories. The first category includes amendments and supplemental appropriations that were approved shortly after the beginning of the year and reflect the actual beginning balances (versus the amounts we estimated in June, 2017). The second category includes changes that the Board made during the year to reflect new information regarding revenue sources and expenditure needs. The principal amendment in this case was an increase in the anticipated amount of State funding to be received. The third category involves amendments moving funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs.

The District's General Fund balance of $9,240,002 reported on page 18 differs from the General Fund's budgetary fund balance of $7,873,825 reported in the budgetary comparison schedule on page 26. For the year ended June 30, 2018, actual general fund expenditures on a budgetary basis were $41,259,043, above the original budget expenditures of $39,300,000. The actual expenditures were below the revised final budget of $41,980,000. Actual revenue on a budgetary basis was $40,900,220 compared to the original budget of $37,605,000 and a revised budget of $40,255,000. The actual variance of $645,220 was due to higher than expected state funding offset by lower than expected property tax revenue.

CAPITAL ASSETS AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION

Capital Assets

At June 30, 2018, the District had $143,165,847 (net of accumulated depreciation) invested in a broad range of capital assets, including facilities and equipment for instruction, transportation, athletics, administration, and maintenance. This amount represents a net increase of $3,432,071, or 2.45 percent, above last year.

This fiscal year's major additions included:

Continuing construction costs on renovations and additions at an existing high school, paid for with proceeds of general obligation bonds.	$6,937,253
Final construction costs on a telephone & data network, paid for with proceeds of general obligation bonds.	293,952
Playground equipment	142,520
TOTAL	$7,373,725

More detailed information about the District's capital assets is presented in Note 4 to the financial statements.

Debt Administration

At year-end, the District had $176,235,549 in bonds outstanding (including accreted interest on bonds and premiums on bond issuances) versus $181,734,196 last year–a decrease of 3.03 percent. $6,740,000 in new debt was incurred during the current fiscal year. The District's underlying rating for unlimited tax bonds is "AA" by S&P, and "AA-" by Fitch but is considered AAA as a result of guarantees of the Texas Permanent School Fund.

State statutes limit the amount of general obligation debt a governmental entity may issue to 10 percent of its total assessed valuation. The current debt limitation for the District is $237,334,077, which is in excess of the District's outstanding general obligation debt.

More detailed information about the District's long-term liabilities is presented in Note 5 to the financial statements.

ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES

The District's elected and appointed officials considered many factors when setting the fiscal year 2018-2019 budget and tax rate. Several of those factors were the economy, student enrollment growth, and funding levels by the State of Texas. The District adopted a $1,926,000 deficit budget for the general fund, a $40,000 deficit budget for the child nutrition fund and a $431,699 surplus budget for the debt service fund for 2018-2019. The 2018 tax rate was set at $1.67 per $100 valuation ($1.17 maintenance and operations and $.50 debt service), no change from the 2017 tax rate of $1.67.

CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and investors and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to demonstrate the District's accountability for funds the District receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office, at Lovejoy Independent School District, 259 Country Club Road, Allen, Texas 75002, (469) 742-8000.

BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

EXHIBIT A-1

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		Primary Government Governmental Activities
	ASSETS	
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	$ 4,170,817
1120	Current Investments	25,474,342
1220	Property Taxes Receivable (Delinquent)	1,093,116
1230	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(10,931)
1240	Due from Other Governments	1,219,348
1300	Inventories	55,244
	Capital Assets:	
1510	Land	6,053,893
1520	Buildings, Net	126,133,283
1530	Furniture and Equipment, Net	2,555,193
1540	Other Capital Assets, Net	1,338,713
1580	Construction in Progress	7,084,765
1000	Total Assets	175,167,783
	DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES	
1701	Deferred Charge for Refunding	4,560,392
1705	Deferred Resource Outflow Related to TRS Pension	4,561,892
1706	Deferred Resource Outflow Related to TRS OPEB	211,409
1700	Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	9,333,693
	LIABILITIES	
2110	Accounts Payable	302,821
2150	Payroll Deductions & Withholdings	(4,009)
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	3,287,892
2180	Due to Other Governments	117,761
2200	Accrued Expenses	2,515,543
2300	Unearned Revenue	247,929
2400	Payable from Restricted Assets	12,919
	Noncurrent Liabilities	
2501	Due Within One Year	6,859,827
2502	Due in More Than One Year	169,375,722
2540	Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	8,837,267
2545	Net OPEB Liability (District's Share)	14,921,715
2000	Total Liabilities	206,475,387
	DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES	
2603	Deferred Resource Inflow Related to TRS OPEB	6,241,781
2605	Deferred Resource Inflow Related to TRS Pension	2,710,775
2600	Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	8,952,556
	NET POSITION	
3200	Net Investment in Capital Assets	(13,753,512)
3820	Restricted for Federal and State Programs	374,539
3850	Restricted for Debt Service	4,584,875
3900	Unrestricted	(22,132,369)
3000	Total Net Position	$ (30,926,467)

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		1 Expenses	Program Revenues 3 Charges for Services	Program Revenues 4 Operating Grants and Contributions	Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position 6 Primary Gov. Governmental Activities
	Primary Government:				
	GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:				
11	Instruction	$ 18,941,941	$ 1,198,294	$ (2,503,102)	$ (20,246,749)
12	Instructional Resources and Media Services	636,161	-	(106,447)	(742,608)
13	Curriculum and Staff Development	1,228,607	-	(160,926)	(1,389,533)
21	Instructional Leadership	356,966	-	85,743	(271,223)
23	School Leadership	2,073,043	-	(401,497)	(2,474,540)
31	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	1,336,429	-	(197,036)	(1,533,465)
33	Health Services	339,103	249,985	(68,673)	(157,791)
34	Student (Pupil) Transportation	984,195	-	(197,461)	(1,181,656)
35	Food Services	1,833,963	1,701,130	310,912	178,079
36	Extracurricular Activities	3,329,297	136,432	1,845,135	(1,347,730)
41	General Administration	1,515,250	-	(206,584)	(1,721,834)
51	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	3,740,641	96,623	(369,203)	(4,013,221)
52	Security and Monitoring Services	127,095	-	(680)	(127,775)
53	Data Processing Services	591,265	-	(77,267)	(668,532)
61	Community Services	998,495	188,685	719,480	(90,330)
72	Debt Service - Interest on Long Term Debt	5,593,946	-	198,325	(5,395,621)
73	Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	89,800	-	-	(89,800)
81	Capital Outlay	1,702,632	-	15,048	(1,687,584)
91	Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	766,070	-	-	(766,070)
93	Payments related to Shared Services Arrangements	14,477	-	-	(14,477)
99	Other Intergovernmental Charges	285,522	-	-	(285,522)
[TP]	TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:	$ 46,484,898	$ 3,571,149	$ (1,114,233)	(44,027,982)

Data Control Codes		
	General Revenues:	
	Taxes:	
MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes	28,139,485
DT	Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service	12,031,648
SF	State Aid - Formula Grants	8,621,061
IE	Investment Earnings	423,827
MI	Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue	191,375
TR	Total General Revenues	49,407,396
CN	Change in Net Position	5,379,414
NB	Net Position - Beginning	(10,111,011)
PA	Prior Period Adjustment "Required by GASB 75"	(26,194,870)
NE	Net Position--Ending	$ (30,926,467)

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
BALANCE SHEET
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	60 Capital Projects
	ASSETS			
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	$ 2,450,290	$ 655,959	$ (778,901)
1120	Investments - Current	9,001,953	3,849,868	12,622,521
1220	Property Taxes - Delinquent	760,247	332,869	-
1230	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes (Credit)	(7,602)	(3,329)	-
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	1,107,318	5,941	-
1300	Inventories	-	-	-
1000	Total Assets	$ 13,312,206	$ 4,841,308	$ 11,843,620
	LIABILITIES			
2110	Accounts Payable	$ -	$ -	$ 302,821
2150	Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable	(4,009)	-	-
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	3,090,341	-	-
2180	Due to Other Governments	117,761	-	-
2200	Accrued Expenditures	166,465	-	-
2300	Unearned Revenues	173,082	-	-
2400	Payable from Restricted Assets	-	12,919	-
2000	Total Liabilities	3,543,640	12,919	302,821
	DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES			
2601	Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	528,564	243,514	-
2600	Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	528,564	243,514	-
	FUND BALANCES			
	Nonspendable Fund Balance:			
3410	Inventories	-	-	-
	Restricted Fund Balance:			
3450	Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	-
3480	Retirement of Long-Term Debt	-	4,584,875	-
	Committed Fund Balance:			
3510	Construction	-	-	11,540,799
3545	Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-
	Assigned Fund Balance:			
3580	Projected 2018-2019 Budget Deficit	1,926,000	-	-
3600	Unassigned Fund Balance	7,314,002	-	-
3000	Total Fund Balances	9,240,002	4,584,875	11,540,799
4000	Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows & Fund Balances	$ 13,312,206	$ 4,841,308	$ 11,843,620

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
$ 1,843,469	$ 4,170,817
-	25,474,342
-	1,093,116
-	(10,931)
106,089	1,219,348
55,244	55,244
$ 2,004,802	$ 32,001,936
$ -	$ 302,821
-	(4,009)
197,551	3,287,892
-	117,761
17,298	183,763
74,847	247,929
-	12,919
289,696	4,149,076
-	772,078
-	772,078
55,244	55,244
374,539	374,539
-	4,584,875
-	11,540,799
1,285,323	1,285,323
-	1,926,000
-	7,314,002
1,715,106	27,080,782
$ 2,004,802	$ 32,001,936

This page left blank intentionally.

	Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds	$	27,080,782
1	Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources, and therefore, are not reported in the fund financial statements.		183,356,923
2	Accumulated depreciation is not reported in the fund financial statements.		(40,191,076)
3	Bonds payable are not reported in the fund financial statements.		(162,875,234)
4	Bond premiums and discounts are not recognized in the fund financial statements.		(10,145,316)
5	Interest is accrued on outstanding debt in the government-wide financial statements, whereas in the fund financial statements interest expenditures are reported when due.		(2,331,780)
6	Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68 in the amount of $8,837,267, a Deferred Resource Inflow related to TRS in the amount of $2,710,775, and a Deferred Resource Outflow related to TRS in the amount of $4,561,892. This amounted to a decrease in Net Position in the amount of $6,986,150.		(6,986,150)
7	Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net Other Post-Employement Benefit (OPEB) liability required by GASB 75 in the amount of $14,921,715, a Deferred Resource Inflow related to TRS OPEB in the amount of $6,241,781, and a Deferred Resource Outflow related to TRS OPEB in the amount of $211,409. This amounted to a net decrease in Net Position in the amount of $20,952,087.		(20,952,087)
8	Property tax revenue reported as unavailable revenue in the fund financial statements was recognized as revenue in the government-wide financial statements.		772,078
9	Accreted interest on capital appreciation bonds has not been recorded in the fund financial statements.		(3,214,999)
10	Deferred charge on bond refundings is not recognized in the fund financial statements.		4,560,392
19	**Net Position of Governmental Activities**	$	(30,926,467)

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	60 Capital Projects
	REVENUES:			
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	$ 29,955,083	$ 12,023,925	$ 203,089
5800	State Program Revenues	10,694,529	197,702	-
5900	Federal Program Revenues	250,608	-	-
5020	Total Revenues	40,900,220	12,221,627	203,089
	EXPENDITURES:			
	Current:			
0011	Instruction	23,071,102	-	-
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	749,194	-	-
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	1,457,643	-	-
0021	Instructional Leadership	439,038	-	-
0023	School Leadership	2,643,358	-	-
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	1,674,613	-	-
0033	Health Services	420,885	-	-
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	1,259,714	-	-
0035	Food Services	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular Activities	1,770,152	-	-
0041	General Administration	1,773,990	-	-
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	3,885,154	-	-
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	127,095	-	-
0053	Data Processing Services	651,140	-	-
0061	Community Services	269,896	-	-
	Debt Service:			
0071	Principal on Long Term Debt	-	6,130,000	-
0072	Interest on Long Term Debt	-	6,283,196	-
0073	Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	89,800	-
	Capital Outlay:			
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	-	9,793,304
	Intergovernmental:			
0091	Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	766,070	-	-
0093	Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	14,477	-	-
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	285,522	-	-
6030	Total Expenditures	41,259,043	12,502,996	9,793,304
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(358,823)	(281,369)	(9,590,215)
	OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):			
7911	Capital Related Debt Issued (Regular Bonds)	-	3,240,000	3,500,000
7916	Premium or Discount on Issuance of Bonds	-	197,323	-
8949	Other (Uses)	-	(5,565,750)	-
7080	Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	-	(2,128,427)	3,500,000
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	(358,823)	(2,409,796)	(6,090,215)
0100	Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)	9,598,825	6,994,671	17,631,014
3000	Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)	$ 9,240,002	$ 4,584,875	$ 11,540,799

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
$ 5,033,571	$ 47,215,668
482,820	11,375,051
798,261	1,048,869
6,314,652	59,639,588
1,123,169	24,194,271
6,693	755,887
42,715	1,500,358
145,374	584,412
5,146	2,648,504
46,765	1,721,378
-	420,885
-	1,259,714
1,945,685	1,945,685
1,923,426	3,693,578
(10,073)	1,763,917
(428)	3,884,726
-	127,095
-	651,140
828,389	1,098,285
-	6,130,000
-	6,283,196
-	89,800
15,048	9,808,352
-	766,070
-	14,477
-	285,522
6,071,909	69,627,252
242,743	(9,987,664)
-	6,740,000
-	197,323
-	(5,565,750)
-	1,371,573
242,743	(8,616,091)
1,472,363	35,696,873
$ 1,715,106	$ 27,080,782

RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds	$	(8,616,091)
Current year capital asset additions are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they are shown as increases in capital assets in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of reclassifying the current year capital asset additions is to increase net position.		8,105,720
Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position in the government-wide financial statements.		(4,673,649)
Interest is accrued on outstanding debt in the government-wide financial statements, whereas in the fund financial statements interest expenditures are reported when due.		77,015
Revenues from property taxes are considered unavailable in the fund financial statements until they are considered available to finance current expenditures, but such revenues are recognized when assessed, net of an allowance for uncollectable amounts, in the government-wide financial statements.		224,272
Current year issuances of bonds are shown as other resources in the fund financial statements but are shown as increases in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		(6,740,000)
The premium on the current year issuances of bonds is recorded as an other resource in the fund financial statements, but is capitalized in the government-wide financial statements.		(197,323)
Refunding bond proceeds deposited with an escrow agent are shown as an other use in the fund financial statements but are shown as a reduction in long-term debt and a deferred charge for refunding in the government-wide financial statements.		5,565,750
The implementation of GASB 68 required that certain expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. These contributions made after the measurement date of 8/31/2017 caused the change in the ending net position to increase in the amount of $823,102. Contributions made before the measurement but during the 2018 FY were also de-expended and recorded as a reduction in the net pension liability for the District. This also caused an increase in the change in net position in the amount of $145,767. These contributions were replaced with the District's pension expense for the year of $1,320,167, which caused a decrease in the change in net position. The impact of all of these is to decrease net position by $351,298.		(351,298)
The implementation of GASB 75 required that certain expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. TRS OPEB contributions made after the measurement date of 8/31/2017 but during the current fiscal year caused the ending net position to increase in the amount of $209,074. These contributions were replaced with the District's OPEB expense for the year, which was a $5,033,709 benefit and also caused an increase in net position. The impact of both of these is to increase net position by $5,242,783.		5,242,783

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

Current year amortization of the premium/discount on bonds payable is not recorded in the fund financial statements, but is shown as a reduction in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		1,249,707
Current year interest accretion on capital appreciation bonds is not recognized in the fund financial statements, but is shown as an increase in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		(373,737)
Current year principal payments on bonds payable are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but are shown as reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements.		6,130,000
Current year amortization of deferred charge on bond refunding is not recorded in the fund financial statements, but is shown as a reduction of the deferred loss in the government-wide financial statements.		(263,735)
Change in Net Position of Governmental Activities	$	5,379,414

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE - GENERAL FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		Budgeted Amounts Original	Budgeted Amounts Final	Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	REVENUES:				
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	$ 30,105,000	$ 32,795,228	$ 29,955,083	$ (2,840,145)
5800	State Program Revenues	7,500,000	7,459,771	10,694,529	3,234,758
5900	Federal Program Revenues	-	2	250,608	250,606
5020	Total Revenues	37,605,000	40,255,000	40,900,220	645,220
	EXPENDITURES:				
	Current:				
0011	Instruction	22,575,000	23,100,000	23,071,102	28,898
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	630,000	775,000	749,194	25,806
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	1,455,000	1,500,000	1,457,643	42,357
0021	Instructional Leadership	500,000	460,000	439,038	20,962
0023	School Leadership	2,200,000	2,660,000	2,643,358	16,642
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	1,450,000	1,700,000	1,674,613	25,387
0033	Health Services	420,000	450,000	420,885	29,115
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	1,050,000	1,375,000	1,259,714	115,286
0036	Extracurricular Activities	1,500,000	1,775,000	1,770,152	4,848
0041	General Administration	1,800,000	1,835,000	1,773,990	61,010
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	3,920,000	4,140,000	3,885,154	254,846
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	125,000	150,000	127,095	22,905
0053	Data Processing Services	600,000	665,000	651,140	13,860
0061	Community Services	40,000	275,000	269,896	5,104
	Intergovernmental:				
0091	Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	760,000	800,000	766,070	33,930
0093	Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	20,000	15,000	14,477	523
0095	Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	15,000	15,000	-	15,000
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	270,000	290,000	285,522	4,478
6030	Total Expenditures	39,330,000	41,980,000	41,259,043	720,957
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	(1,725,000)	(1,725,000)	(358,823)	1,366,177
0100	Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)	9,598,825	9,598,825	9,598,825	-
3000	Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)	$ 7,873,825	$ 7,873,825	$ 9,240,002	$ 1,366,177

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION
FIDUCIARY FUNDS
JUNE 30, 2018

	Private Purpose Trust Fund	Agency Fund
ASSETS		
Cash and Cash Equivalents	$ 5,487	$ 36,992
Total Assets	5,487	$ 36,992
LIABILITIES		
Due to Student Groups	5,487	$ 36,992
Total Liabilities	5,487	$ 36,992

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

This page left blank intentionally.

NOTE 1. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Lovejoy Independent School District's (the "District") combined financial statements have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) as applied to governmental units in conjunction with the Texas Education Agency's (TEA) Financial Accountability System Resource Guide (FAR). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles. The more significant accounting policies of the District are described below.

A. REPORTING ENTITY

The Board of Trustees, a seven member group, has fiscal accountability over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The board of trustees are elected by the public. The trustees as a body corporate have the exclusive power and duty to govern and oversee the management of the public schools of the district. All powers and duties not specifically delegated by statute to the Texas Education Agency (Agency) or to the State Board of Education are reserved for the trustees, and the Agency may not substitute its judgment for the lawful exercise of those powers and duties by the trustees. The District is not included in any other governmental "reporting entity" as defined in Section 2100, Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards.

The District's basis financial statements include the accounts of all District operations. The criteria for including organizations as component units within the District's reporting entity, as set forth in Section 2100 of GASB's Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards, include whether:

- the organization is legally separate (can sue and be sued in their own name)
- the District holds the corporate powers of the organization
- the District appoints a voting majority of the organization's board
- the District is able to impose its will on the organization
- the organization has the potential to impose a financial benefit/burden on the District
- there is fiscal dependency by the organization on the District

Based on the aforementioned criteria, the Lovejoy Independent School District has no component units.

B. BASIS OF PRESENTATION

The government-wide financial statements (the statement of net position and the statement of activities) report information on all of the nonfiduciary activities of the District. The effect of interfund activity has been removed from these statements, except that interfund services provided and used are not eliminated in the process of consolidation. Governmental activities, which normally are supported by taxes and intergovernmental revenues, are reported separately from business-type activities, which rely to a significant extent on fees and charges for support.

The statement of activities demonstrates the degree to which the direct expenses of a given program are offset by program revenues. Direct expenses are those that are clearly identifiable with a specific program. Program revenues include 1) charges to customers or applicants who purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods, services, or privileges provided by a given program and 2) operating or capital grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular program. Taxes and other items not properly included among program revenues are reported instead as general revenues.

Fund Financial Statements:

The District segregates transactions related to certain functions or activities in separate funds in order to aid financial management and to demonstrate legal compliance. Separate financial statements are provided for governmental funds and fiduciary funds, even though the latter are excluded from the government-wide financial statements. Major individual governmental funds are reported as separate columns in the fund financial statements.

Governmental funds are those funds through which most governmental functions typically are financed. The measurement focus of governmental funds is on the sources, uses and balance of current financial resources. The District has presented the following major governmental funds:

1. **General Fund** - This fund is established to account for resources financing the fundamental operations of the District, in partnership with the community, in enabling and motivating students to reach their full potential. All revenues and expenditures not required to be accounted for in other funds are included here. This is a budgeted fund and any fund balances are considered resources available for current operations. Fund balances may be appropriated by the Board of Trustees to implement its responsibilities.

2. **Debt Service Fund** - This fund is established to account for payment of principal and interest on long-term general obligation debt and other long-term debts for which a tax has been dedicated. This is a budgeted fund. Any unused sinking fund balances are transferred to the General Fund after all of the related debt obligations have been met.

3. **Capital Projects Fund** - This fund is established to account for proceeds, from the sale of bonds and other resources to be used for Board authorized acquisition, construction, or renovation, as well as, furnishings and equipping of major capital facilities. Upon completion of a project, any unused bond proceeds are transferred to the Debt Service Fund and are used to retire related bond principal.

Additionally, the District reports the following fund types:

1. **Special Revenue Funds** – The District accounts for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by the District or a grantor in a special revenue fund. Most Federal and some State financial assistance is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund, and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods. For many funds in this fund type, project accounting is employed to maintain integrity for the various sources of funds.

2. **Private Purpose Trust Funds** – The District accounts for donations for which the donor has stipulated that both the principal and the income may be used for purposes that benefit parties outside the District. The District uses this fund to account for scholarship funds.

3. **Agency Funds** - These custodial funds are used to account for activities of student groups and other organizational activities requiring clearing accounts. Financial resources for the Agency funds are recorded as assets and liabilities; therefore, these funds do not include revenues and expenditures and have no fund equity. If any unused resources are declared surplus by the student groups, they are transferred to the General Fund with a recommendation to the Board for an appropriate utilization through a budgeted program.

Activities accounted for in the Special Revenue Funds are:

ESEA I, A Improving Basic Programs - funds granted to serve students needing reading and math assistance
IDEA-Part B Formula - funds granted for children with disabilities
IDEA-Part B Preschool - funds granted for preschool children with disabilities
National Breakfast and Lunch Program - funds granted to serve meals to disadvantaged children
ESEA II, A Training and Recruiting - funds for training to improve teacher and principal quality
Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition - funds to improve the education of limited English proficient children
Medicaid Admin Claim (MAC) - fund for administrative costs related to Medicaid services
ESEA IV, A - funds granted to serve students needing reading and math assistance
Non Educational Community Based Support - funds granted for support services to student with disabilities
Advanced Placement Incentives - funds granted under the Texas Advanced Placement Award incentive program
State Textbook Fund - funds granted for textbook and technology needs
Ready to Read - funds received from State license plate program for reading initiatives
Campus Activity Funds - accounts for funds raised by a campus for the benefit of that campus
Grants/Donations - accounts for the expenditure of grants and donations received by the District
Learning at Lovejoy - accounts for the activity of an annual education conference
School Store - accounts for the operating activity of a school store on two campuses
Concessions Operations - accounts for the concessions activity of the child nutrition dept.
Catering Operations - accounts for the catering activity of the child nutrition dept.
Kids First/Day Care - accounts for the activity of an employee child care and an afterschool program

C. MEASUREMENT FOCUS/BASIS OF ACCOUNTING

Measurement focus refers to what is being measured; basis of accounting refers to when revenues and expenditures are recognized in the accounts and reported in the financial statements. Basis of accounting relates to the timing of the measurement made, regardless of the measurement focus applied.

The government-wide statements are reported using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. The economic resources measurement focus means all assets, deferred outflows of resources and liabilities (whether current or non-current) are included on the statement of net position and the operating statements present increases (revenues) and decreases (expenses) in net total position. Under the accrual basis of accounting, revenues are recognized when earned and expenses are recognized at the time the liability is incurred. Agency funds have no measurement focus.

Governmental fund financial statements are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and are accounted for using the modified accrual basis of accounting. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, revenues are recognized when susceptible to accrual; i.e., when they become both measurable and available. "Measurable" means the amount of the transaction can be determined and "available" means collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period. The District considers property taxes as available if they are collected within 60 days after year-end. A 60-day availability period is also used for recognition of all other Governmental Fund revenues. Expenditures are recorded when the related fund liability is incurred. However, debt service expenditures, as well as expenditures related to compensated absences are recorded only when payment is due.

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) TRS-Care Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net OPEB liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits, OPEB expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS-Care's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. There are no investments as this is a pay-as-you-go plan and all cash is held in a cash account.

The revenue susceptible to accrual are property taxes, charges for services, interest income and intergovernmental revenues. All other Governmental Fund Type revenues are recognized when received.

Revenues from state and federal grants are recognized as earned when the related program expenditures are incurred. Funds received but unearned are reflected as unearned revenues, and funds expended but not yet received are shown as receivables.

When both restricted and unrestricted resources are available for use, it is the District's policy to use restricted resources first when appropriate, then unrestricted resources as they are needed.

Revenue from investments, including governmental external investment pools, is based upon fair value. Fair value is the amount at which a financial instrument could be exchanged in a current transaction between willing parties, other than in a forced or liquidation sale. Most investments are reported at amortized cost when the investments have remaining maturities of one year of less at time of purchase. External investment pool are permitted to report short-term debt investments at amortized cost, provided that the fair value of those investments is not significantly affected by the impairment of the credit standing of the issuer, or other factors. For that purpose, a pool's short-term investments are those with remaining maturities of up to ninety days.

In accordance with the FAR, the District has adopted and installed an accounting system which exceeds the minimum requirements prescribed by the State Board of Education and approved by the State Auditor. Specifically, the District's accounting system uses codes and the code structure presented in the Accounting Code Section of the FAR.

D. BUDGETARY CONTROL

The Board adopts an "appropriated budget" on a basis consistent with GAAP for the general fund, debt service fund and food service fund. At a minimum, the District is required to present the original and the final amended budgets for revenues and expenditures compared to actual revenues and expenditures for these three funds. Many of the special revenue funds and the capital project fund adopt project-length budgets which do not correspond to the District's fiscal year.

The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the financial statements:

- Prior to June 20th the District prepares a budget based on the modified zero-based budgeting concept for the next succeeding fiscal year. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.

- After one of more budget workshops with the Board, a meeting is called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget. At least ten days but not more than 30 days public notice of the meeting is required.

- Prior to July 1st the Board legally adopts the budget for the general fund, debt service fund and food service fund.

- After the budget for the above listed funds is approved, any amendment that causes an increase or decrease in a fund or functional spending category or total revenue or other resources object category requires Board approval prior to the fact. These amendments are presented to the Board at its regular monthly meeting and are reflected in the official minutes. Because the District has a policy of careful budgetary control, some budgetary amendments were necessary throughout the year.

- Expenditure budgets are controlled at the expenditure functional and object level by the appropriate budget manager (principal, department director or divisional administrator). Budget managers may authorize transfers within functional and organizational categories that do not affect the total functional and organizational appropriation. All budget appropriations lapse at year-end.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees revised the District's budget at times. These budget amendments fall into three categories. The first category includes amendments and supplemental appropriations that were approved shortly after the beginning of the year and reflect the actual beginning balances (versus the amounts we estimated in June, 2017). The second category includes changes that the Board made during the year to reflect new information regarding revenue sources and expenditure needs. The third category involves amendments moving funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs.

A reconciliation of fund balances for both appropriated budget and nonappropriated budget special revenue funds is as follows:

	June 30, 2018 Fund Balance
Appropriated Budget Funds – Food Service	$ 387,623
Nonappropriated Budget Funds	1,327,483
All Special Revenue Funds	$1,715,106

E. ENCUMBRANCE ACCOUNTING

The District employs encumbrance accounting, whereby encumbrances for goods or purchased services are documented by purchase orders and contracts. An encumbrance represents a commitment of Board appropriation related to unperformed contracts for goods and services. The issuance of a purchase order or the signing of a contract creates an encumbrance but does not represent an expenditure for the period, only a commitment to expend resources. Appropriations lapse at June 30 and encumbrances outstanding at that time are either canceled or appropriately provided for in the subsequent year's budget.

F. CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS

Cash and cash equivalents in the accompanying financial statements is comprised of demand accounts and imprest funds. The District maintains a demand account on an imprest basis through which most obligations are paid. Checking account balances for most governmental fund expenditures are pooled into one demand account.

Investments in the accompanying financial statements is comprised of investments in state investment pools. The District has no investments at year-end that require adjustment to fair value.

G. INVENTORIES

The consumption method is used to account for inventories of food products, school supplies and athletic equipment. Under this method, these items are carried in an inventory account of the respective fund at cost, using the first-in, first-out method of accounting and are subsequently charged to expenditures when consumed. In the Child Nutrition Fund, reported inventories have been shown as nonspendable fund balance to indicate that they are unavailable as current expendable financial resources.

H. INTERFUND RECEIVABLES AND PAYABLES

During the course of normal operations, the District has numerous transactions between funds. The most significant are short-term interfund loans, due to the fact that checking account balances for most governmental funds are pooled into one demand account. There were no interfund balances at June 30, 2018.

I. CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital assets, which includes property, plant, equipment, and infrastructure assets, are reported in the applicable governmental or business-type activities columns in the government-wide financial statements and in the fund financial statements for proprietary funds. All capital assets are valued at historical cost or estimated historical cost if actual historical cost is not available. Donated assets are valued at their fair market value on the date donated. Repairs and maintenance are recorded as expenses. Renewals and betterments are capitalized. Interest has not been capitalized during the construction period on property, plant and equipment.

Assets capitalized have an original cost of $5,000 or more and over one-year of useful life. Depreciation has been calculated on each class of depreciable property using the straight-line method. Estimated useful lives are as follows:

Buildings and Building Improvements	39 Years
Vehicle	5 Years
Buses	15 Years
Other Equipment	3-7 Years

J. COMPENSATED ABSENCES

Vacations are to be taken within the same year they are earned, and any unused days at the end of the calendar year are forfeited. Therefore, no liability for unused vacation leave has been accrued in the accompanying financial statements. Employees of the District are entitled to sick leave based on category/class of employment. Sick leave is allowed to be accumulated but does not vest. Therefore, a liability for unused sick leave has not been recorded in the accompanying financial statements.

K. NET POSITION

Net position represents the difference between assets, deferred outflows, deferred inflows and liabilities. Net investment in capital assets consists of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciations, reduced by the outstanding balances of any borrowing used for the acquisition, construction or improvements of those assets, and adding back unspent proceeds. Net position is reported as restricted when there are limitations imposed on their use either through the enabling legislations adopted by the District or through external restrictions imposed by creditors, grantors or laws or regulations of other governments.

L. LONG-TERM OBLIGATIONS

In the government-wide financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the governmental activities statement of net position. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount. Accretion is an adjustment of the difference between the price of a bond issued at an original discount and the par value of the bond. For the governmental activities debt, the accreted value is recognized as it accrues by fiscal year.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

M. DEFERRED OUTFLOWS/INFLOWS OF RESOURCES

Deferred outflows and inflows of resources are reported in the statement of financial position as described below:

A *deferred outflow of resources* is a consumption of a government's net assets (a decrease in assets in excess of any related decrease in liabilities or an increase in liabilities in excess of any related increase in assets) by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period. The District has three items that quality for reporting in this category:

Deferred outflows of resources for refunding - Reported in the government-wide statement of net position, the deferred charge on bond refundings results from the difference in the carrying value of refunded debt and its reacquisition price. This amount is deferred and amortized over the shorter of the life of the refunded or refunding debt. The amount of deferred outflows reported in the governmental activities for the deferred charge on bond refundings at June 30, 2018 was $4,560,392.

Deferred outflows of resources for pension - Reported in the government-wide financial statement of net position, this deferred outflow results from pension plan contributions made after the measurement date of the net pension liability and the results of differences between expected and actual actuarial experiences. The deferred outflows of resources related to pensions resulting from District contributions subsequent to the measurement date will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability in the next fiscal year. The other pension related deferred outflows will be amortized over the expected remaining service lives of all employees (active and inactive employees) that are provided with pensions through the pension plan which is currently approximately 6.7 years.

A deferred outflow for pension expense results from payments made to the TRS pension plan by the District after the plan's measurement date. The amount of deferred outflows reported in the governmental activities for deferred pension expenses at June 30, 2018 was $4,561,892.

Deferred outflows of resources for OPEB- Reported in the government-wide financial statement of net position, this deferred outflow results from OPEB plan contributions made after the measurement date of the net OPEB liability and the results of differences between expected and actual investment earnings and changes in proportionate share. The deferred outflows of resources related to OPEB resulting from District contributions subsequent to the measurement date will be recognized as a reduction of the net OPEB liability in the next fiscal year. The other OPEB related deferred outflows will be amortized over the expected remaining service lives of all employees (active and inactive employees) that are provided with OPEB through the OPEB plan which is currently approximately 8.6 years. The amount of deferred outflows reported in the governmental activities for deferred OPEB expense at June 30, 2018 was $211,409.

A *deferred inflow of resources* is an acquisition of a government's net assets (an increase in assets in excess of any related increase in liabilities or a decrease in liabilities in excess of any related decrease in assets) by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period. The District has three items that qualify for reporting in this category:

Deferred inflows of resources for unavailable revenues - Reported only in the governmental funds balance sheet, unavailable revenues from property taxes arise under the modified accrual basis of accounting. These amounts are deferred and recognized as an inflow of resources in the period that the amounts become available. The District reported property taxes that are unavailable as deferred inflows of resources in the fund financial statements. The amount of deferred inflows of resources reported in the governmental funds at June 30, 2018 was $772,078.

Deferred inflows of resources for pension - Reported in the government-wide financial statement of net position, these deferred inflows result primarily from differences between projected and actual earnings on pension plan investments. These amounts will be amortized over a closed five year period. In fiscal year 2018, the District reported deferred inflows of resources for pensions in the governmental activities in the amount of $2,710,775.

Deferred inflows of resources for OPEB - Reported in the government-wide financial statement of net position, these deferred inflows result primarily from differences between expected and actual experience and from changes in assumptions. These amounts will be amortized over the average expected remaining service life (AERSL) of all members (8.6 years for the 2017 measurement year). In fiscal year 2018, the District reported deferred inflows of resources for OPEB in the governmental activities in the amount of $6,241,781.

N. RISK MANAGEMENT

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts; theft of, damage to and destruction of assets; errors and omissions; injuries to employees; and natural disasters. During the year ended June 30, 2018, Lovejoy ISD participated in the TASB Risk Management Fund's (the Fund's) Property Casualty Program.

The Fund was created and is operated under the provision of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties.

The Fund purchases stop-loss coverage for protection against catastrophic and larger than anticipated claims for the Property Casualty Program. The terms and limits of the stop-loss program vary by line of coverage. The Fund uses the services of an independent actuary to determine the adequacy of reserves and fully funds those reserves.

Based on information provided by TASB for the year ended June 30, 2018, Lovejoy ISD will have no additional liability beyond the contractual obligations for payment of contributions. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year.

The Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each plan year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's Board of Trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2017, are available at the TASB offices and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

O. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

Management has reviewed events subsequent to June 30, 2018 through October 17, 2018, which is the date the financial statements were available to be issued. No subsequent events were identified that are required to be disclosed in the financial statements.

P. ESTIMATES

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect certain reported amounts and disclosures. Accordingly, actual results could differ from those estimates.

Q. DATA CONTROL CODES

The Data Control Codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by the Texas Education Agency (the "Agency") in their Resource Guide. The Agency requires school districts to display these codes in the financial statements filed with the Agency in order to insure accuracy in building a Statewide data base for policy development and funding plans.

R. IMPLEMENTATION OF NEW STANDARD

In the current fiscal year the District implemented the following new standard:

GASB Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits other than Pensions* ("GASB 75") establishes accounting and financial reporting standards for other post-employment benefits (OPEB) that are provided to the employees of state and local governmental employers through plans that are administered through trusts or similar arrangements that meet certain criteria. The Statement establishes standards for measuring and recognizing liabilities, deferred outflows of resources, deferred inflows of resources and expenses/expenditures. Implementation is reflected in the financial statements, notes to the financial statements and required supplementary information. Statement 75 requires governments in all types of OPEB plans to present more extensive note disclosures and required supplementary information (RSI) about their OPEB liabilities. Among the new note disclosures is a description of the effect on the reported OPEB liability of using a discount rate and a healthcare cost trend rate that are on percentage point higher and one percentage point lower than assumed by the government. The new RSI includes a schedule showing the causes of increases and decreases in the OPEB liability and a schedule comparing a government's actual OPEB contributions to its contribution requirements.

NOTE 2. FUND BALANCE

In a previous year the District implemented GASB Statement No. 54, "Fund Balance Reporting and Governmental Fund Type Definitions." This Statement provided more clearly defined fund balance categories to make the nature and extent of the constraints placed on a government's fund balances more transparent.

Fund Balance Classification: The governmental fund financial statements present fund balances based on classifications that comprise a hierarchy that is based primarily on the extent to which the District is bound to honor constraints on the specific purposes for which amounts in the respective governmental funds can be spent. The classifications used in the governmental fund financial statements are as follows:

- Nonspendable: This classification includes amounts that cannot be spent because they are either (a) not in spendable form or (b) are legally or contractually required to be maintained intact. The District has classified inventories as being nonspendable as these items are not expected to be converted to cash.

- Restricted: This classification includes amounts for which constraints have been placed on the use of the resources either (a) externally imposed by creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments, or (b) imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation. Debt service resources are to be used for future servicing of the District's bonded debt and are restricted through debt covenants. Capital projects fund resources are to be used for future construction and renovation projects and are restricted through bond orders and constitutional law. Food service resources are to be used in the food service program.

- Committed: This classification includes amounts that can be used only for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal action of the District's Board of Trustees. The Board of Trustees establishes (and modifies or rescinds) fund balance commitments by passage of a resolution. This can also be done through adoption and amendment of the budget. These amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the Board removes or changes the specified use by taking the same type of action that was employed when the funds were initially committed. This classification also includes contractual obligations to the extent that existing resources have been specifically committed for use in satisfying those contractual requirements. The Board of Trustees have committed resources as of June 30, 2018 for campus activities, Learning at Lovejoy and other various purposes.

- Assigned: This classification includes amounts that are constrained by the District's intent to be used for a specific purpose but are neither restricted nor committed. This intent can be expressed by the Board of Trustees or through the Board of Trustees delegating this responsibility to other individuals in the District. Under the District's adopted policy, only the Board of Trustees may assign amounts for specific purposes. This classification also includes the remaining positive fund balance for all governmental funds except for the General Fund. The District has assigned some fund balance of the General Fund as of June 30, 2018.

- Unassigned: This classification includes all amounts not included in other spendable classifications, including the residual fund balance for the General Fund.

When an expenditure is incurred for purposes for which both restricted and unrestricted fund balance is available, the District considers restricted funds to have been spent first. When an expenditure is incurred for which committed, assigned, or unassigned fund balances are available, the District considers amounts to have been spent first out of committed funds, then assigned funds, and finally unassigned funds, as needed, unless the Board of Trustees has provided otherwise in its commitment or assignment actions.

The Board of Trustees has no formal fund balance policy that expresses an intent to maintain a level of assigned and unassigned fund balance in the General Fund but operates under a guideline of attempting to maintain a balance equal to 25 percent of the fund's operating expenditures.

The details of the fund balances are included in the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet and are described below:

General Fund

The General Fund has unassigned fund balance of $7,314,002 at June 30, 2018. The District has assigned General Fund fund balance resources of $1,926,000 to fund a projected 2018-2019 budget deficit.

Other Major Funds

The Debt Service Fund has restricted funds of $4,584,875 at June 30, 2018 consisting primarily of property tax collections that are restricted for debt service payments on bonded debt. The Capital Projects Fund has a fund balance of $11,540,799 at June 30, 2018 consisting primarily of unspent bond proceeds.

Other Funds

The fund balance of $693,720 of the Campus Activity Fund (a special revenue fund) is shown as committed due to Board policy committing those funds to campus activities. The fund balance of $37,047 of the Learning at Lovejoy Fund, $63,586 of the School Store Fund, $88,244 of the Kids First/Day Care Fund, $9,688 of the concessions and catering operations, and $393,038 of the Grants/Donations Fund (all special revenue funds) are shown as committed due to similar Board policy. $374,539 of the fund balance of the Food Service Fund (a special revenue fund) is shown as restricted for that purpose. The remainder of the Food Service Fund is shown as nonspendable fund balance because it has already been spent on inventories ($13,084), as well as $42,160 of the School Store Fund fund balance.

NOTE 3. DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust with the District's agent bank approved pledged securities in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance.

1. Cash Deposits:

   At June 30, 2018, the carrying amount of the District's deposits checking accounts and interest-bearing savings accounts was $4,208,297 and the bank balance was $4,766,131. The District's cash deposits at June 30, 2018 were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name.

2. Investments:

The Public Funds Investment Act (Government Code Chapter 2256) contains specific provisions in the areas of investment practices, management reports and establishment of appropriate policies. Among other things, it requires the District to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, (9) and bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit. Statutes authorize the District to invest in (1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, certain U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas; (2) certificates of deposit, (3) certain municipal securities, (4) money market savings accounts, (5) repurchase agreements, (6) bankers acceptances, (7) Mutual Funds, (8) Investment pools, (9) guaranteed investment contracts, (10) and common trust funds. The Act also requires the District to have independent auditors perform test procedures related to investment practices as provided by the Act. The District is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the Act and with local policies.

In compliance with the Public Funds Investment Act, the District has adopted a deposit and investment policy. That policy addresses the following risks:

a. Custodial Credit Risk – Deposits: In the case of deposits, this is the risk that, in the event of a bank failure, the District's deposits may not be returned to it. As of June 30, 2018, the District's cash balances totaled $4,766,131. This entire amount was either collateralized with a surety bond held by the District's financial institution's agent in the District's name or covered by FDIC insurance. Thus, the District's deposits are not exposed to custodial credit risk.

b. Custodial Credit Risk - Investments: For an investment, this is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty, the District will not be able to recover the value of its investments or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. At June 30, 2018, the District held all of its investments in three public funds investment pools (TexPool, Texas Class and Texas Term). Investments in external investment pools are considered unclassified as to custodial credit risk because they are not evidenced by securities that exist in physical or book entry form.

c. Credit Risk - This is the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will be unable to fulfill its obligations. The rating of securities by nationally recognized rating agencies is designed to give an indication of credit risk. The credit quality rating for TexPool at year-end was AAAm (Standard & Poor's), and the credit quality rating for Texas Class and Texas Term was AAAf (Standard & Poor's).

d. Interest Rate Risk - This is the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. The District manages its exposure to declines in fair values by limiting the weighted average maturity of its investment portfolio to less than one year from the time of purchase. The weighted average maturity for the TexPool, Texas Class and Texas Term investments is less than 60 days.

e. Foreign Currency Risk - This is the risk that exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At June 30, 2018, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

f. Concentration of Credit Risk - This is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of the District's investment in a single issuer (i.e., lack of diversification). Concentration risk is defined as positions of 5 percent or more in the securities of a single issuer. Investment pools are excluded from the 5 percent disclosure requirement.

Public funds investment pools in Texas ("Pools") are established under the authority of the Interiocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 79 of the Texas Government Code, and are subject to the provisions of the Public Funds Investment Act (the "Act"), Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. In addition to other provisions of the Act designed to promote liquidity and safety of principal, the Act requires Pools to: 1) have an advisory board composed of participants in the pool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with the pool and are qualified to advise the pool; 2) maintain a continuous rating of no lower than AAA or AAA-m or an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and 3) maintain the market value of its underlying investment portfolio within one half of one percent of the value of its shares.

The District's investments in Pools are reported at an amount determined by the fair value per share of the pool's underlying portfolio, unless the pool is 2a7-like, in which case they are reported at share value. A 2a7-like pool is one which is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") as an investment company, but nevertheless has a policy that it will, and does, operate in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

The District's investments at June 30, 2018, are shown below:

Name	Fair Value
Lone Star	$ 3,846,086
TexPool	8,655,224
Texas Term	7,867,186
Texas Class	5,105,846
Total	$25,474,342

Fair Value Measurements

The District categorizes its fair value measurements with the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure the fair value of the asset. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs. Investments that are measured at fair value using the net asset value per share (or its equivalent) as a practical expedient are not classified in the fair value hierarchy below.

In instances where inputs used to measure fair value fall into different levels in the above fair value hierarchy, fair value measurements in their entirety are categorized based on the lowest level input that is significant to the valuation. The District's assessment of the significance of particular inputs to these fair value measurements requires judgement and considers factors specific to each asset or liability.

The District's investments in public funds investment pools are not required to be measured at fair value but are measured at amortized cost.

NOTE 4. CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital asset activity for the year ended June 30, 2018, was as follows:

	Balance July 1	Additions/ Completions	Retirement/ Adjustments	Balance June 30
Governmental Activities:				
Capital assets not being depreciated				
Land	$ 6,053,893	$ -	$ -	$ 6,053,893
Construction in progress	20,284,597	7,231,205	(20,431,037)	7,084,765
Total capital assets not being depreciated	26,338,490	7,231,205	(20,431,037)	13,138,658
Capital assets, being depreciated				
Buildings and improvements	143,235,662	19,613,567	-	162,849,229
Furniture and equipment	2,468,365	1,642,312	-	4,110,677
Vehicles	3,208,686	49,673	-	3,258,359
Total capital assets being depreciated	148,912,713	21,305,552	-	170,218,265
Less accumulated depreciation for:				
Buildings and improvements	(32,590,894)	(4,125,052)	-	(36,715,946)
Furniture and equipment	(1,198,422)	(357,062)	-	(1,555,484)
Vehicles	(1,728,111)	(191,535)	-	(1,919,646)
Total accumulated depreciation	(35,517,427)	(4,673,649)	-	(40,191,076)
Total capital assets, being depreciated, net	113,395,286	16,631,903	-	130,027,189
Governmental activities capital assets, net	$ 139,733,776	$23,863,108	$ (20,431,037)	$ 143,165,847

Depreciation expense was charged as direct expense to programs of the District as follows:

Governmental activities:	
Instruction	$2,842,505
Instructional Resources & Media Services	77,524
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	175,965
Instructional Leadership	69,607
School Leadership	299,896
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	179,129
Health Services	53,760
Student Transportation	110,681
Food Services	125,296
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	133,529
General Administration	200,424
Plant Maintenance and Operations	250,086
Data Processing Services	44,861
Community Services	110,386
Total depreciation expense-Governmental activities	$4,673,649

Land and construction in progress are not depreciated.

NOTE 5. LONG-TERM DEBT

The District has entered into a continuing disclosure undertaking to provide Annual Reports and Material Event Notices to the State Information Depository of Texas (SID), which is the Municipal Advisory Council. This information is required under SEC Rule 15c2-12 to enable investors to analyze the financial condition and operations of the District.

Long-term debt of the District consists of eleven series of general obligation bonds, accreted interest on capital appreciation bonds and premiums/discounts on bond issuances. All long-term debt represents transactions in the District's governmental activities.

The following is a summary of the changes in the District's Long-term Debt for the year ended June 30, 2018:

Description	Interest Rate Payable	Amount Original Issue	Amounts Outstanding 7/1/17	Additions	Refunded/ Retired	Amounts Outstanding 6/30/18	Due Within One Year
Bonded Indebtedness:							
2006 Bldg/Refunding	4.00-5.00%	33,824,996	$ 5,570,000	$ -	$ 5,570,000	$ -	$ -
2008 Building	2.95-4.30%	44,836,904	705,000	-	705,000	-	-
2010 Building	4.25-4.38%	7,500,000	7,480,000	-	-	7,480,000	-
2011 Refunding	3.01%	9,265,000	6,960,000	-	565,000	6,395,000	570,000
2012 Building	2.51-4.67%	25,995,234	25,885,234	-	120,000	25,765,234	120,000
2013 Refunding	2.16%	9,100,000	9,000,000	-	25,000	8,975,000	30,000
2014 Bldg/Refunding	2.00-5.00%	21,775,000	17,315,000	-	1,645,000	15,670,000	1,200,000
2015 Refunding	3.00-5.00%	23,435,000	22,460,000	-	435,000	22,025,000	925,000
2015 Building	1.50-4.00%	17,770,000	16,830,000	-	365,000	16,465,000	375,000
2016 Refunding	3.125-5.00%	41,540,000	41,540,000	-	-	41,540,000	680,000
2017 Building	3.00-5.00%	13,950,000	13,950,000	-	2,130,000	11,820,000	600,000
2018 Bldg/Refunding	3.00%	6,740,000	-	6,740,000	-	6,740,000	1,805,000
Total Bonded Indebtedness			167,695,234	6,740,000	11,560,000	162,875,234	6,305,000
Premiums/Discounts on Bond Issuance			11,197,700	197,323	1,249,707	10,145,316	554,827
Accreted Interest			2,841,262	373,737	-	3,214,999	-
Total Other Obligations			14,038,962	571,060	1,249,707	13,360,315	554,827
Total Obligations of District			$181,734,196	$ 7,311,060	$12,809,707	$176,235,549	$6,859,827

The District issues general obligation bonds for the governmental activities to provide funds for the acquisition and construction of major capital facilities. General obligation bonds are direct obligations and pledge the full faith and credit of the District. Current principal and interest requirements are payable solely from future revenues of the Debt Service Fund which consists principally of property taxes collected by the District and interest earnings. Certain outstanding bonds may be redeemed at their par value prior to their normal maturity dates in accordance with the terms of the related bond indentures. The District has never defaulted on any principal or interest payment.

There are a number of limitations and restrictions contained in the various general obligation bonds indentures. The District is in compliance with all significant limitations and restrictions at June 30, 2018.

NOTE 6. DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS - BONDS

Debt service requirements to maturity are as follows:

Year Ended June 30	Principal	Interest	Total Requirements
2019	$ 6,305,000	$ 6,189,996	$ 12,494,996
2020	6,182,908	6,001,489	12,184,397
2021	4,640,000	5,726,096	10,366,096
2022	4,835,000	5,534,146	10,369,146
2023	5,040,000	5,334,194	10,374,194
2024-2028	28,515,000	23,385,858	51,900,858
2029-2033	33,044,740	19,454,274	52,499,014
2034-2038	34,444,384	18,881,356	53,325,740
2039-2043	35,113,202	10,913,299	46,026,501
2044-2045	4,755,000	286,200	5,041,200
Total	$162,875,234	$101,706,908	$264,582,142

NOTE 7. DEFEASED BONDS OUTSTANDING

In prior years, the District issued refunding bonds to defease certain outstanding bonds for the purpose of consolidation and to achieve debt service savings. The District placed the proceeds from the refunding issues in irrevocable escrow accounts with a trust agent to ensure payment of debt service on the refunded bonds.

Accordingly, the trust account assets and liabilities for the defeased bonds are not included in the District's financial statements. Although defeased, the refunded debt from those earlier issues will not be actually retired until the call dates have come due or until maturity if they are not callable issues. On June 30, 2018, $44,920,000 of bonds outstanding are considered defeased.

NOTE 8. PROPERTY TAXES

The Texas Legislature in 1979 adopted a comprehensive Property Tax Code which established an appraisal district and an appraisal review board in each county in the State of Texas. Collin County Appraisal District (CCAD) is responsible for the appraisal of property for all taxing units in Collin County, including the District. Under the terms of a contract for appraisal services, the District paid CCAD $285,522 in fiscal year 2018 for appraising property.

The District levies its taxes on October 1 on the assessed (appraised) value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property located in the District in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. CCAD is required by law to assess property at 100% of its appraised value. Real property must be reappraised at least every two years. Under certain circumstances taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may challenge orders of the CCAD Review Board through various appeals and, if necessary, legal action. Taxes are due upon receipt of the tax bill and are past due and subject to interest if not paid by February 1 of the year following the October 1 levy date. The assessed value of the property tax roll upon which the levy for the 2017-18 fiscal year was based was $2,373,340,778. Taxes are delinquent if not paid by June 30. Delinquent taxes are subject to both penalty and interest charges at the rate of 1.5% per month of delinquency, plus 15 % delinquent collection fees for attorney costs.

The tax rates assessed for the year ended June 30, 2018, to finance General Fund operations and the payment of principal and interest on general obligation long-term debt were $1.17 and $0.50 per $100 valuation, respectively, for a total of $1.67 per $ 100 valuation.

Current tax collections for the year ended June 30, 2018 were 98.68% of the year-end adjusted tax levy. Delinquent taxes are prorated between maintenance and debt service based on rates adopted for the year of the levy. Allowances for uncollectible taxes within the General and Debt Service Funds are based on historical experience in collecting taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature. As of June 30, 2018, property taxes receivable, net of estimated uncollectible taxes, totaled $528,564 and $243,514 for the General and Debt Service Funds, respectively.

Property taxes are recorded as receivables and unavailable revenues at the time the taxes are assessed. Revenues are recognized as the related ad valorem taxes become available. Available means collected within the current period or expected to be collected soon enough thereafter to be used to pay current liabilities. Taxes not expected to be collected within sixty days of the fiscal year ending are recorded as unavailable revenues and are recognized when they become available. Taxes collected prior to the levy date to which they apply are recorded as unavailable revenues and recognized as revenue of the period to which they apply.

NOTE 9. DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLAN

Plan Description. Lovejoy Independent School District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). TRS's defined benefit pension plan is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position. Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at http://www.trs.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr_2016.pdf; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

Benefits Provided. TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description above.

Contributions. Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83rd Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 thru 2017. The 83rd Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 and 2015. The 84th Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2017 and 2018.

Contribution Rates

	2017	2018
Member	7.7%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%

Lovejoy ISD FY2018 Employer Contributions	$	968,869
Lovejoy ISD FY2018 Member Contributions	$	2,421,497
Lovejoy ISD 2018 NECE On-Behalf Contributions	$	1,514,951

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools and state agencies including TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education and junior colleges, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding source or a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

Actuarial Assumptions. The total pension liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8.00%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	8.00%
Inflation	2.50%
Salary Increases Including Inflation	3.50% to 9.50%
Payroll Growth Rate	2.50%
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad hoc Post Employment Benefit Changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are primarily based on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

Discount Rate. The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8.0%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2017 are summarized below:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Real Return Geometric Basis	Long-Term Expected Portfolio Real Rate of Return*
Global Equity			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
Stable Value			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	0%	1.8%	0.0%
Stable Value Hedge Funds	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	0.0%
Real Return			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	0.0%
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0%	1.2%	0.0%
Risk Parity			
Risk Parity	5%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflation Expectation			2.2%
Alpha	0%		1.0%
Total	100%		8.7%

* *The Expected Contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns.*

Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis. The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (7.0%)	Discount Rate (8.0%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (9.0%)
Lovejoy ISD's proportionate share of the net pension liability:	$14,897,880	$ 8,837,267	$ 3,790,815

Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions. At June 30, 2018, Lovejoy Independent School District reported a liability of $8,837,267 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to Lovejoy Independent School District. The amount recognized by Lovejoy Independent School District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with Lovejoy Independent School District were as follows:

District's Proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	$ 8,837,267
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	14,810,995
Total	$23,648,262

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the employer's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 thru August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.0276383859%, an increase of 5.48% from its proportionate share of 0.0262011541% at August 31, 2016.

Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation – There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended June 30, 2018, Lovejoy Independent School District recognized pension expense of $1,129,724 and revenue of $1,129,724 for support provided by the State.

At June 30, 2018, Lovejoy Independent School District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	$ 129,293	$ 476,582
Changes in actuarial assumptions	402,552	230,451
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	1,359,069	2,003,110
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	1,847,876	632
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	823,102	
Total	$4,561,892	$2,710,775

$823,102 reported as deferred outflows of resources resulting from District contributions subsequent to the measurement date will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability in the year ended June 30, 2019. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year ended June 30:	Pension Expense Amount
2019	$ 143,925
2020	708,030
2021	100,579
2022	(65,790)
2023	94,094
Thereafter	47,177

NOTE 10. DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS

Plan Description. The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS- Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined Other Post-Employment Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered through a trust by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position. Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

Components of the net OPEB liability of the TRS-Care plan as of August 31, 2017 are as follows:

Net OPEB Liability	Total
Total OPEB Liability	$43,885,784,621
Less: plan fiduciary net position	399,535,986
Net OPEB liability	$43,486,248,635
Net position as a percentage of total OPEB liability	0.91%

Benefits Provided. TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage (TRS-Care 1), at no cost to all retirees from public schools, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible retirees and their dependents not enrolled in Medicare may pay premiums to participate in one of two optional insurance plans with more comprehensive benefits (TRS-Care 2 and TRS-Care 3). Eligible retirees and dependents enrolled in Medicare may elect to participate in one of the two Medicare health plans for an additional fee. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system. The Board of Trustees is granted the authority to establish basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants as well as to amend benefit terms as needed under Chapter 1575.052. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs.

The premium rates for the optional health insurance are based on years of service of the member. The schedule below shows the monthly rates for the average retiree with Medicare Parts A&B coverage, with 20 to 29 years of service for the basic plan and the two optional plans.

TRS-Care Plan Premium Rates
Effective Sept. 1, 2016 - Dec. 31, 2017

	TRS-Care 1 Basic Plan	TRS-Care 2 Optional Plan	TRS-Care 3 Optional Plan
Retiree*	$ 0	$ 70	$ 100
Retiree and Spouse	20	175	255
Retiree* and Children	41	132	182
Retiree and Family	61	237	337
Surviving Children only	28	62	82

* *or surviving spouse*

Contributions. Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature, and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The TRS-Care plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for TRS-Care is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the state, active employees, and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS Board of trustees does not have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state's contribution rate which is 1.0% of the employee's salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee's rate which is .65% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25 percent or not more than 0.75 percent of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

Contribution Rates

	2017	**2018**
Active Employee	**0.65%**	**0.65%**
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	**1.00%**	**1.25%**
Employers	**0.55%**	**0.75%**
Federal/private Funding remitted by Employers	**1.00%**	**1.25%**

Lovejoy ISD FY18 Employer Contributions	**$204,412**
Lovejoy ISD FY18 Member Contributions	**$225,938**
Lovejoy ISD 2018 NECE On-behalf Contributions	**$297,904**

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to, regardless of whether or not they participate in the TRS Care OPEB program. When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS Care, a monthly surcharge of $535 per retiree.

TRS-Care received supplemental appropriations from the State of Texas as the Non-Employer Contributing Entity in the amount of $15.6 million in fiscal year 2017 and $182.6 million in fiscal year 2018. House Bill 21 was passed in special session and provided a supplemental appropriation in the amount of $212 million in fiscal year 2018.

The District's proportionate of share of the $212,000,000 received during the District's 2018 fiscal year is reported in the fund level financial statements as an on-behalf contribution as required by GASB 85 and GASB 24.

Actuarial Assumptions. The actuarial valuation of TRS-Care is similar to the actuarial valuations performed for the pension plan, except that the OPEB valuation is more complex. All of the demographic assumptions, including mortality, and most of the economic assumptions are identical to those which were adopted by the Board in 2015 and are based on the 2014 actuarial experience study of TRS.

The active mortality rates were based on 90 percent of the RP-2014 Employee Mortality Tables for males and females. The post-retirement mortality rates were based on the 2015 TRS of Texas Healthy Pensioner Mortality Tables.

The total OPEB liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions. The following assumptions and other inputs used for members of TRS-Care are identical to the assumptions used in the August 31, 2017 TRS pension actuarial valuation:

Rates of Mortality	General Inflation
Rates of Retirement	Wage Inflation
Rates of Termination	Expected Payroll Growth
Rates of Disability Incidence	

Additional Actuarial Methods and Assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Inflation	2.50%
Discount Rate	3.42%
Aging Factors	Based on specific plan experience
Expenses	Third-party administrative expenses related to the delivery of health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claim costs
Payroll Growth Rate	2.50%
Projected Salary Increases	3.50% to 9.50%
Healthcare Trend Rates	4.50% to 12.00%
Election Rates	Normal Retirement: 70% participation prior to age 65 and 75% participation after age 65
Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes	None

Discount Rate. A single discount rate of 3.42% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of .44 percent in the discount rate since the previous year. Because the plan is essentially a "pay-as-you-go" plan, the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position was projected to not be able to make all future benefit payments of currentplan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability. *The source of the municipal bond rate was Fixed-income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federally tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index's "20-year Municipal GO AA Index" as of August 31, 2017.*

Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis. The following schedule shows the impact of the Net OPEB Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (3.42%) in measuring the Net OPEB Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (2.42%)	Current Single Discount Rate (3.42%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (4.42%)
District's proportionate share of the Net OPEB Liability:	$17,611,326	$14,921,715	$12,759,875

Healthcare Cost Trend Rates Sensitivity Analysis - The following presents the net OPEB liability of the plan using the assumed healthcare cost trend rate, as well as what the OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using a trend rate that is one-percentage lower or one-percentage point higher than the assumed healthcare cost trend rate:

	1% Decrease	Current Healthcare Cost Trend Rate	1% Increase
District's proportionate share of the Net OPEB Liability:	$12,423,820	$14,921,715	$18,199,270

OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expenses, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEBs. At June 30, 2018, the District reported a liability of $14,921,715 for its proportionate share of the TRS's Net OPEB Liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provided to the District.

The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's Proportionate share of the collective Net OPEB Liability	$14,921,715
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	$24,917,669
Total	$39,839,384

The Net OPEB Liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the Total OPEB Liability used to calculate the Net OPEB Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the Net OPEB Liability was based on the employer's contributions to the OPEB plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 thru August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective Net OPEB Liability was 0.0343136405% which was the same proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation – The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period:

1. Significant plan changes were adopted during fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will exist (instead of three), and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. The health plan changes triggered changes to several of the assumptions including participation rates, retirement rates, and spousal participation rates.

2. The August 31, 2016 valuation had assumed that the savings related to the Medicare Part D reimbursements would phase out by 2022. This assumption was removed for the August 31, 2017 valuation. Although there is uncertainty regarding these federal subsidies, the new assumption better reflects the current substantive plan. This change was unrelated to the plan amendment, and its impact included assumption change in the reconciliation of the total OPEB liability. This change significantly lowered the OPEB liability.

3. The discount rate changed from 2.98 percent as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42 percent as of August 31, 2017. This change lowered the total OPEB liability.

In this valuation the impact of the Cadillac Tax has been calculated as a portion of the trend assumption. Assumptions and methods used to determine the impact of the Cadillac Tax include:

- 2018 thresholds of $850/$2,292 were indexed annually by 2.50 percent.
- Premium data submitted was not adjusted for permissible exclusions to the Cadillac Tax.
- There were no special adjustments to the dollar limit than those permissible for non-Medicare retirees over 55.

Results indicate that the value of the excise tax would be reasonably represented by a 25 basis point addition to the long term rate assumption.

Future actuarial measurements may differ significantly from the current measurements due to such factors as the following: plan experience differing from that anticipated by the economic or demographic assumptions; changes in economic or demographic assumptions; increases or decreases expected as part of the natural operation of the methodology used for these measurements; and changes in plan provisions or applicable law.

The significant changes to the plan benefits and assumptions noted above lowered the OPEB liability related to TRS-Care plan as a whole by $33.3 billion. As a result, the District's proportional share of the net OPEB liability decreased by $11,421,819. Because the decrease in the liability was the result of changes to plan benefits, a majority of the decrease has been recognized immediately in the District's financial statements. As a result, the District recognized a total proportional share of negative OPEB expense of $13,580,898. A portion of this negative expense represents the State's on behalf share of this activity which is offset by what the Governmental Accounting Standards Board refers to as a negative revenue in the amount of $8,338,115.

For the year ended June 30, 2018, the District recognized OPEB expense of $297,904 and revenue of $297,904 for support provided by the State.

At June 30, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	$ -	$ 311,502
Changes in actuarial assumptions	-	5,930,279
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	2,267	-
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	68	-
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	209,074	-
Total	$ 211,409	$6,241,781

The net amounts of the employer's balance of deferred outflows and inflows of resources (not including the deferred contribution paid subsequent to the measurement date) related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

Year ended June 30:	OPEB Expense Amount
2019	$ (823,302)
2020	(823,302)
2021	(823,302)
2022	(823,302)
2023	(823,869)
Thereafter	(2,122,369)

NOTE 11. SCHOOL DISTRICT RETIREE HEALTH PLAN

Plan Description. The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575. Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees authority to establish and amend the basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. The TRS issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by visiting the TRS Web site at www.trs.state.tx.us, by writing to the Communications Department of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701, or by calling 1-800-223-8778.

Funding Policy. Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. Texas Insurance Code, Sections 1575.202, 203, and 204 establish state, active employee, and public school contributions, respectively. The State of Texas and active public school employee contribution rates were 1.0% and 0.65% of public school payroll, respectively, with school districts contributing a percentage of payroll set at 0.55% for fiscal years 2017 and 2016. For fiscal year 2018, contribution rates were 1.25% for the State of Texas, 0.65% for active employees and 0.75% for school districts. Per Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575, the public school contribution may not be less than 0.25% or greater than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public school. For the years ended June 30, 2018, 2017, and 2016, the State's contributions to the TRS-Care were $393,100, $301,597, and $286,640, respectively, the active member contributions were $204,412, $196,038, and $186,316, respectively, and the school district's contribution were $225,938, $165,878, and $157,652, respectively, which equaled the required contributions each year.

The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, which was effective January 1, 2006, established prescription drug coverage for Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare D allows for the Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. These on-behalf payments are recognized as equal revenues and expenditures/expenses by the District. For the year ended June 30, 2018, the contribution made on behalf of the District was $121,859.

NOTE 12. WORKERS' COMPENSATION INSURANCE

During the year ended June 30, 2018, Lovejoy ISD met its statutory workers' compensation obligations through participation in the TASB Risk Management Fund (the Fund). The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. The Fund's Workers' Compensation Program is authorized by Chapter 504, Texas Labor Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties. The Fund provides statutory workers' compensation benefits to its members and their injured employees.

The Fund and its members are protected against higher than expected claims costs through the purchase of stop-loss coverage for any claim in excess of the Fund's self-insured retention of $1.5 million. The Fund uses the services of an independent actuary to determine reserve adequacy and fully funds those reserves. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund carries a discounted reserve of $100,206,101 for future development on reported claims and claims that have been incurred but not yet reported. For the year ended June 30, 2018, the Fund anticipates no additional liability to members beyond their contractual obligations for payment of contributions.

The Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each plan year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's Board of Trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2017, are available at the TASB offices and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

NOTE 13. HEALTH CARE COVERAGE

During the year ended June 30, 2018, employees of the District were covered by a health insurance plan (the plan). The District paid premiums of $225 per month per employee to the plan and employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents' health insurance coverage. All premiums were paid to a licensed insurer. The plan was authorized by Article 3.51-2, Texas Insurance Code and was documented by contractual agreement.

The contract between the District and the licensed insurer is renewable September 1, 2018 and terms of coverage and premium costs are included in the contractual provisions.

Latest financial statements for Blue Cross Blue Shield are available for the year ended December 31, 2017, and are filed with the Texas State Board of Insurance, Austin, Texas, and are public records.

NOTE 14. UNEMPLOYMENT COMPENSATION POOL

During the year ended June 30, 2018, Lovejoy ISD provided unemployment compensation coverage to its employees through participation in the TASB Risk Management Fund (the Fund). The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. The Fund's Unemployment Compensation Program is authorized by Section 22.005 of the Texas Education Code and Chapter 172 of the Texas Local Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties.

The Fund meets its quarterly obligation to the Texas Workforce Commission. Expenses are accrued each month until the quarterly payments has been made. Expenses can be reasonably estimated; therefore, there is no need for specific or aggregate stop-loss coverage for Unemployment Compensation pool members.

The Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each plan year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's Board of Trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2017 are available at the TASB offices and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

NOTE 15. DUE FROM OTHER GOVERNMENTS

The District participates in a variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation and Per Capita Programs. Amounts due from federal, state and local governments as of June 30, 2018, are summarized below. All federal grants shown below are passed through the TEA and are reported on the combined financial statements as Due from Other Governments.

Fund	Local Entitlements	State Entitlements	Federal Grants	Total
General	$ -	$1,107,318	$ -	$1,107,318
Debt Service	-	5,941	-	5,941
Special Revenue	-	58,733	47,356	106,089
Total	$ -	$1,171,992	$ 47,356	$1,219,348

NOTE 16. CONTINGENT LIABILITIES

The Tax Reform Act of 1986 imposed regulations on tax-exempt bond issues. Governmental bonds issued after August 31, 1986 are subject to the rebate provisions of the Tax Reform Act of 1986. The rebate applies to earnings from bond issue proceeds investments which exceed bond issue stated interest rates. The exact amount of liability, if any, will not be known until as long as five years from the bond issuance date. At June 30, 2018, the estimated rebate liability on outstanding bond series was $0.

NOTE 17. LITIGATION AND CONTINGENCIES

The District is a party to various legal actions none of which is believed by administration to have a material effect on the financial condition of the District. Accordingly, no provision for losses has been recorded in the accompanying combined financial statements for such contingencies.

Minimum foundation funding received from the Agency is based primarily upon information concerning average daily attendance at the District's schools which is compiled by the District and supplied to the Agency. Federal funding for Food Services under child nutrition programs is based primarily upon the number and type of meals served and on user charges as reported to the USDA. Federal and state funding received related to various grant programs are based upon periodic reports detailing reimbursable expenditures made in compliance with program guidelines to the grantor agencies.

The programs are governed by various statutory rules and regulations of the grantors. Amounts received and receivable under these various funding programs are subject to periodic audit and adjustment by the funding agencies. To the extent, if any, that the District has not complied with all the rules and regulations with respect to performance, financial or otherwise, adjustment to or return of funding monies may be required. In the opinion of the District's administration, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to matters of compliance and, accordingly, no provision has been made in the accompanying financial statements for such contingencies.

The Collin County Appraisal District is a defendant in various lawsuits involving the property values assigned to property located within the District's boundaries on which the District assesses property taxes. The District could be required to refund property taxes paid on values which were greater than the ultimate final assessed valuation assigned by the court. Such lawsuits could continue several years into the future.

NOTE 18. REVENUES FROM LOCAL AND INTERMEDIATE SOURCES

During the current year, revenues from local and intermediate sources consisted of the following:

	General Fund	Special Revenue Fund	Debt Service Fund	Capital Projects Fund	Total
Property Taxes	$27,855,651	$ -	$11,899,006	$ -	$39,754,657
Investment Income	153,107	6,738	67,631	203,089	430,565
Food Sales	-	1,812,225	-	-	1,812,225
Penalties, interest and other tax related income	134,916	-	57,288	-	192,204
Co-curricular student activities	136,432	1,717,090	-	-	1,853,522
Tuition and fees	1,198,294	927,000	-	-	2,125,294
Gifts and bequests	185,550	532,899	-	-	718,449
Facilities rentals	86,192	37,619	-	-	123,811
Insurance recovery	10,431	-	-	-	10,431
Late Nite Leopards	188,685	-	-	-	188,685
Other	5,825	-	-	-	5,825
Total	$29,955,083	$5,033,571	$12,023,925	$ 203,089	$47,215,668

NOTE 19. UNEARNED REVENUE

Unearned revenue at year-end consisted of the following:

	General Fund	Special Revenue Fund	Debt Service Fund	Total
Season ticket sales	$127,182	$ -	$ -	$127,182
Tuition	45,900	-	-	45,900
Summer enrichment revenue	-	33,480	-	33,480
State textbook funds	-	41,280	-	41,280
Ready to read	-	87	-	87
	$173,082	$74,847	$ -	$247,929

NOTE 20. EXCESS OF EXPENDITURES OVER APPROPRIATIONS BY FUNCTION

The Texas Education Agency requires the budgets for the Governmental fund types to be filed with the Texas Education Agency. The budget should not be exceeded in any functional category under TEA requirements. Expenditures exceeded appropriations in no functional categories for the year ended June 30, 2018.

NOTE 21. SHARED SERVICE ARRANGEMENTS

The District participates in a shared services arrangement which provides a regional day school for the deaf to several member districts, and also participates in a shared services arrangement for juvenile justice alternative education services with several school districts. Although the District contributes to the shared services arrangement based on its participation, the District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, nor does the District have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to Lovejoy ISD. The fiscal agent manager is responsible for all financial activities of the shared services arrangement. During the year ended June 30, 2018, the District incurred no costs in the regional day school for the deaf, and incurred no costs in the juvenile justice alternative education program.

NOTE 22. PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENT

In fiscal year 2018, the District implemented GASB Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Post-Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions (OPEB).* As a result the beginning net position of the District's governmental activities has been restated on the Statement of Activities to reflect the net OPEB liability and deferred outflows of resources relating to TRS-Care contributions made after the prior measurement date of the plan. The following illustrates the effect of the prior period adjustment:

Beginning Net Position (Deficit) – As Originally Presented	$(10,111,011)
Restatement due to:	
Net OPEB liability (measurement date as of August 31, 2016)	(26,343,534)
Deferred Outflows:	
District contributions made to TRS during the fiscal year	148,664
Beginning Net Position (Deficit) – As Restated	$(36,305,881)

This page left blank internally.

REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

	FY 2018 Plan Year 2017	FY 2017 Plan Year 2016	FY 2016 Plan Year 2015	FY 2015 Plan Year 2014
District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)	0.027638386%	0.026201154%	0.0268281%	0.0181979%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)	$ 8,837,267	$ 9,901,027	$ 9,483,376	$ 4,860,911
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) associated with the District	14,810,995	17,757,045	16,465,674	14,484,731
Total	$ 23,648,262	$ 27,658,072	$ 25,949,050	$ 19,345,642
District's Covered Payroll	$ 30,403,395	$ 28,877,118	$ 26,839,008	$ 25,130,174
District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered Payroll	29.07%	34.29%	35.33%	19.34%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability	82.17%	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the information on this schedule be data from the period corresponding with the periods covered as of the measurement dates of August 31, 2017 for year 2018, August 31, 2016 for Year 2017, August 31, 2015 for Year 2016 and August 31, 2014 for 2015.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only four years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

EXHIBIT G-2

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PENSIONS
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS
FOR FISCAL YEAR 2018

	2018	2017	2016	2015
Contractually Required Contribution	$ 968,869	$ 900,035	$ 821,878	$ 735,270
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	(968,869)	(900,035)	(821,878)	(735,270)
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	$ -0-	$ -0-	$ -0-	$ -0-
District's Covered Payroll	$ 31,447,998	$ 30,159,743	$ 28,664,041	$ 26,839,008
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll	3.08%	2.98%	2.87%	2.74%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 of the preceding year.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only four years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET OPEB LIABILITY
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

	FY 2018 Plan Year 2017
District's Proportion of the Net Liability (Asset) for Other Post Employment Benefits	0.03431364%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Post Employment Benefit Liability (Asset)	$ 14,921,715
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Post Employment Benefit Liability (Asset) associated with the District	24,917,669
Total	$ 39,839,384
District's Covered Payroll	$ 30,403,395
District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered Payroll	49.08%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total OPEB Liability	0.91%

Note: GASB Codification, Vol. 2, P50.238 states that the information on this schedule should be determined as of the measurement date. Therefore the amounts reported for FY 2018 are based on the August 31, 2017 measurement date.

This schedule shows only the year for which this information is available. Additional information will be added until 10 years of data are available and reported.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS FOR OTHER POST EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS (OPEB)

TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS

FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

		2018
Contractually Required Contribution	$	231,818
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution		(231,818)
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	$	-0-
District's Covered Payroll	$	31,447,998
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll		0.74%

Note: GASB Codification, Vol. 2, P50.238 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 of the preceding year..

Information in this schedule should be provided only for the years where data is available. Eventually 10 years of data should be presented.

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

PENSION LIABILITY:

Changes of benefit terms:

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

Changes of assumptions:

There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

OPEB LIABILITY:

Changes of benefit terms:

There were no changes in benefit terms that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

Changes of assumptions:

The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period:

1. Significant plan changes were adopted during fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will exist (instead of three), and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. The health plan changes triggered changes to several of the assumptions including participation rates, retirement rates, and spousal participation rates.

2. The August 31, 2016 valuation had assumed that the savings related to the Medicare Part D reimbursements would phase out by 2022. This assumption was removed for the August 31, 2017 valuation. Although there is uncertainty regarding these federal subsidies, the new assumption better reflects the current substantive plan. This change was unrelated to the plan amendment, and its impact included assumption change in the reconciliation of the total OPEB liability. This change significantly lowered the OPEB liability.

3. The discount rate changed from 2.98 percent as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42 percent as of August 31, 2017. This change lowered the total OPEB liability.

COMBINING SCHEDULES

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
COMBINING BALANCE SHEET
NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program
	ASSETS				
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	$ (242)	$ 2,790	$ (612)	$ 471,421
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	242	38,591	612	-
1300	Inventories	-	-	-	13,084
1000	Total Assets	$ -	$ 41,381	$ -	$ 484,505
	LIABILITIES				
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	$ -	$ 37,033	$ -	$ 89,307
2200	Accrued Expenditures	-	4,348	-	7,575
2300	Unearned Revenues	-	-	-	-
2000	Total Liabilities	-	41,381	-	96,882
	FUND BALANCES				
	Nonspendable Fund Balance:				
3410	Inventories	-	-	-	13,084
	Restricted Fund Balance:				
3450	Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	-	374,539
	Committed Fund Balance:				
3545	Other Committed Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000	Total Fund Balances	-	-	-	387,623
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	$ -	$ 41,381	$ -	$ 484,505

255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	263 Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition	272 Medicaid Admin. Claim MAC	289 ESEA Title IV Part A	392 Non-Ed. Community Based Support	397 Advanced Placement Incentives	410 State Textbook Fund	429 Ready to Read
$ -	$ -	$ (2,379)	$ (5,532)	$ -	$ -	$ (7,140)	$ 87
-	-	2,379	5,532	-	-	58,733	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ 51,593	$ 87
$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ 9,630	$ -
-	-	-	-	-	-	683	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	41,280	87
-	-	-	-	-	-	51,593	87
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ 51,593	$ 87

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
COMBINING BALANCE SHEET
NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		461 Campus Activity Funds	465 Grants/ Donations	485 Learning at Lovejoy	495 School Store
	ASSETS				
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	$ 693,720	$ 393,038	$ 37,047	$ 63,586
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	-	-	-	-
1300	Inventories	-	-	-	42,160
1000	Total Assets	$ 693,720	$ 393,038	$ 37,047	$ 105,746
	LIABILITIES				
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
2200	Accrued Expenditures	-	-	-	-
2300	Unearned Revenues	-	-	-	-
2000	Total Liabilities	-	-	-	-
	FUND BALANCES				
	Nonspendable Fund Balance:				
3410	Inventories	-	-	-	42,160
	Restricted Fund Balance:				
3450	Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	-	-
	Committed Fund Balance:				
3545	Other Committed Fund Balance	693,720	393,038	37,047	63,586
3000	Total Fund Balances	693,720	393,038	37,047	105,746
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	$ 693,720	$ 393,038	$ 37,047	$ 105,746

497 Concessions Operations	498 Catering Operations	499 Kids First/ Day Care	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
$ 9,194	$ 494	$ 187,997	$ 1,843,469
-	-	-	106,089
-	-	-	55,244
$ 9,194	$ 494	$ 187,997	$ 2,004,802
$ -	$ -	$ 61,581	$ 197,551
-	-	4,692	17,298
-	-	33,480	74,847
-	-	99,753	289,696
-	-	-	55,244
-	-	-	374,539
9,194	494	88,244	1,285,323
9,194	494	88,244	1,715,106
$ 9,194	$ 494	$ 187,997	$ 2,004,802

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN
FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program
	REVENUES:				
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ 1,707,868
5800	State Program Revenues	-	-	-	66,547
5900	Federal Program Revenues	178,087	476,398	1,278	126,532
5020	Total Revenues	178,087	476,398	1,278	1,900,947
	EXPENDITURES:				
	Current:				
0011	Instruction	178,087	287,452	1,278	-
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	-	-	-	-
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	-	-	-
0021	Instructional Leadership	-	142,181	-	-
0023	School Leadership	-	-	-	-
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	-	46,765	-	-
0035	Food Services	-	-	-	1,844,278
0036	Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0041	General Administration	-	-	-	-
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	-	-	-	-
0061	Community Services	-	-	-	-
	Capital Outlay:				
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	-	-	-
6030	Total Expenditures	178,087	476,398	1,278	1,844,278
1200	Net Change in Fund Balance	-	-	-	56,669
0100	Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	330,954
3000	Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ 387,623

255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	263 Title III, A English Lang. Acquisition	272 Medicaid Admin. Claim MAC	289 ESEA Title IV Part A	392 Non-Ed. Community Based Support	397 Advanced Placement Incentives	410 State Textbook Fund	429 Ready to Read
$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
-	-	-	-	6,550	7,060	402,663	-
2,015	2,226	3,193	8,532	-	-	-	-
2,015	2,226	3,193	8,532	6,550	7,060	402,663	-
-	2,226	-	8,532	-	-	397,517	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
2,015	-	-	-	-	7,060	-	-
-	-	3,193	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	5,146	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	6,550	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
2,015	2,226	3,193	8,532	6,550	7,060	402,663	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN
FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		461 Campus Activity Funds	465 Grants/ Donations	485 Learning at Lovejoy	495 School Store
	REVENUES:				
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	$ 1,525,772	$ 494,269	$ 109,718	$ 199,949
5800	State Program Revenues	-	-	-	-
5900	Federal Program Revenues	-	-	-	-
5020	Total Revenues	1,525,772	494,269	109,718	199,949
	EXPENDITURES:				
	Current:				
0011	Instruction	20,841	227,236	-	-
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	-	6,693	-	-
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	33,640	-	-
0021	Instructional Leadership	-	-	-	-
0023	School Leadership	-	-	-	-
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	-	-	-	-
0035	Food Services	-	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular Activities	1,400,846	200,471	148,454	173,655
0041	General Administration	-	(10,073)	-	-
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	-	(428)	-	-
0061	Community Services	-	-	-	-
	Capital Outlay:				
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	15,048	-	-
6030	Total Expenditures	1,421,687	472,587	148,454	173,655
1200	Net Change in Fund Balance	104,085	21,682	(38,736)	26,294
0100	Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)	589,635	371,356	75,783	79,452
3000	Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)	$ 693,720	$ 393,038	$ 37,047	$ 105,746

497 Concessions Operations	498 Catering Operations	499 Kids First/ Day Care	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
$ 99,274	$ 11,821	$ 884,900	$ 5,033,571
-	-	-	482,820
-	-	-	798,261
99,274	11,821	884,900	6,314,652
-	-	-	1,123,169
-	-	-	6,693
-	-	-	42,715
-	-	-	145,374
-	-	-	5,146
-	-	-	46,765
90,080	11,327	-	1,945,685
-	-	-	1,923,426
-	-	-	(10,073)
-	-	-	(428)
-	-	821,839	828,389
-	-	-	15,048
90,080	11,327	821,839	6,071,909
9,194	494	63,061	242,743
-	-	25,183	1,472,363
$ 9,194	$ 494	$ 88,244	$ 1,715,106

This page left blank intentionally.

REQUIRED T.E.A. SCHEDULES

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE
FISCAL YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Last 10 Years		(1) Tax Rates Maintenance	(2) Tax Rates Debt Service	(3) Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes
2009	and prior years	Various	Various	$ Various
2010		1.060000	0.475000	1,423,098,958
2011		1.060000	0.475000	1,484,722,686
2012		1.060000	0.475000	1,491,287,818
2013		1.060000	0.475000	1,548,565,472
2014		1.060000	0.475000	1,670,693,029
2015		1.060000	0.500000	1,837,430,448
2016		1.060000	0.500000	1,974,616,410
2017		1.170000	0.500000	2,155,176,826
2018	(School year under audit)	1.170000	0.500000	2,373,340,778
1000	TOTALS			

(10) Beginning Balance 7/1/2017	(20) Current Year's Total Levy	(31) Maintenance Collections	(32) Debt Service Collections	(40) Entire Year's Adjustments	(50) Ending Balance 6/30/2018
$ 34,408	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -	$ 34,408
22,606	-	-	-	-	22,606
21,531	-	-	-	-	21,531
23,654	-	2,699	1,209	5,487	25,233
28,161	-	31,622	14,170	70,592	52,961
43,515	-	35,901	16,088	76,783	68,309
61,161	-	40,513	19,110	82,196	83,734
97,758	-	31,049	14,646	65,424	117,487
497,139	-	278,812	119,150	46,235	145,412
-	39,634,791	27,402,770	11,710,586	-	521,435
$ 829,933	$ 39,634,791	$ 27,823,366	$ 11,894,959	$ 346,717	$ 1,093,116

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		Budgeted Amounts Original	Budgeted Amounts Final	Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	REVENUES:				
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	$ 1,700,000	$ 1,700,000	$ 1,707,868	$ 7,868
5800	State Program Revenues	5,000	5,000	66,547	61,547
5900	Federal Program Revenues	225,000	225,000	126,532	(98,468)
5020	Total Revenues	1,930,000	1,930,000	1,900,947	(29,053)
	EXPENDITURES:				
0035	Food Services	1,929,390	1,929,390	1,844,278	85,112
0053	Data Processing Services	610	610	-	610
6030	Total Expenditures	1,930,000	1,930,000	1,844,278	85,722
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	-	-	56,669	56,669
0100	Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)	330,954	330,954	330,954	-
3000	Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)	$ 330,954	$ 330,954	$ 387,623	$ 56,669

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - DEBT SERVICE FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Data Control Codes		Budgeted Amounts Original	Budgeted Amounts Final	Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	REVENUES:				
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	$ 12,380,000	$ 12,380,000	$ 12,023,925	$ (356,075)
5800	State Program Revenues	220,000	220,000	197,702	(22,298)
5020	Total Revenues	12,600,000	12,600,000	12,221,627	(378,373)
	EXPENDITURES:				
	Debt Service:				
0071	Principal on Long Term Debt	6,130,000	6,130,000	6,130,000	-
0072	Interest on Long Term Debt	6,440,478	6,440,478	6,283,196	157,282
0073	Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	29,522	29,522	89,800	(60,278)
6030	Total Expenditures	12,600,000	12,600,000	12,502,996	97,004
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	-	(281,369)	(281,369)
	OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):				
7911	Capital Related Debt Issued (Regular Bonds)	-	3,240,000	3,240,000	-
7916	Premium or Discount on Issuance of Bonds	-	200,000	197,323	(2,677)
8949	Other (Uses)	-	(5,640,000)	(5,565,750)	74,250
7080	Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	-	(2,200,000)	(2,128,427)	71,573
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	-	(2,200,000)	(2,409,796)	(209,796)
0100	Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)	6,994,671	6,994,671	6,994,671	-
3000	Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)	$ 6,994,671	$ 4,794,671	$ 4,584,875	$ (209,796)

This page left blank intentionally.

FEDERAL AWARDS SECTION

This page left blank intentionally.

Members:
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS
TEXAS SOCIETY OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

HANKINS, EASTUP, DEATON, TONN & SEAY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

902 NORTH LOCUST
P.O. BOX 977
DENTON, TX 76202-0977

TEL. (940) 387-8563
FAX (940) 383-4746

INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ON COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS BASED ON AN AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS PERFORMED IN ACCORDANCE WITH *GOVERNMENT AUDITING STANDARDS*

To the Board of Trustees
Lovejoy Independent School District
Allen, Texas 75002

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Lovejoy Independent School District, as of and for the year ended June 30, 2018, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise Lovejoy Independent School District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report dated October 17, 2018.

Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the District's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or, significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

Compliance and Other Matters

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

Purpose of this Report

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of the audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn + Seay

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, PC
Denton, Texas

October 17, 2018

Members:
AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS
TEXAS SOCIETY OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

HANKINS, EASTUP, DEATON, TONN & SEAY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

902 NORTH LOCUST
P.O. BOX 977
DENTON, TX 76202-0977
TEL. (940) 387-8563
FAX (940) 383-4746

INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT ON COMPLIANCE FOR EACH MAJOR PROGRAM AND ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER COMPLIANCE REQUIRED BY THE UNIFORM GUIDANCE

To the Board of Trustees
Lovejoy Independent School District
Allen, Texas 75002

Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program

We have audited Lovejoy Independent School District's compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the *OMB Compliance Supplement* that could have a direct and material effect on each of Lovejoy Independent School District's major federal programs for the year ended June 30, 2018. Lovejoy Independent School District's major federal programs are identified in the summary of auditor's results section of the accompanying schedule of finding and questioned costs.

Management's Responsibility

Management is responsible for compliance with the requirements of laws, regulations, contracts, and grants applicable to its federal programs.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of Lovejoy Independent School District's major federal programs based on our audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above. We conducted our audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards,* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations* Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about Lovejoy Independent School District's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, our audit does not provide a legal determination of Lovejoy Independent School District's compliance.

Opinion on Each Major Federal Program

In our opinion, Lovejoy Independent School District complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on each of its major federal programs for the year ended June 30, 2018.

Report on Internal Control Over Compliance

Management of Lovejoy Independent School District is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing our audit of compliance, we considered Lovejoy Independent School District's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of Lovejoy Independent School District's internal control over compliance.

A *deficiency in internal control over compliance* exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. A *material weakness in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance, such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. We did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay

Hankins, Eastup, Deaton, Tonn & Seay, PC
Denton, Texas

October 17, 2018

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

I. Summary of Auditor's Results

1. Type of auditor's report issued on the financial statements: Unmodified.

2. Internal control over financial reporting:
   Material weakness(es) identified: None
   Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses: None reported

3. Noncompliance which is material to the financial statements: None

4. Internal controls over major federal programs:
   Material weakness(es) identified: None
   Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses: None reported

5. Type of auditor's report on compliance for major federal programs: Unmodified.

6. Did the audit disclose findings which are required to be reported in accordance with 2 CFR 200.516(a)?: No

7. Major programs include:

   IDEA-B Cluster:

CFDA 84.027	IDEA, Part B, Formula
CFDA 84.173	IDEA, Part B, Preschool

8. Dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs: $750,000.

9. Low risk auditee: No

II. Findings Related to the Financial Statements

None

III. Other Findings

None

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
STATUS OF PRIOR YEAR FINDINGS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

NONE

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

(1) FEDERAL GRANTOR/ PASS-THROUGH GRANTOR/ PROGRAM or CLUSTER TITLE	(2) Federal CFDA Number	(3) Pass-Through Entity Identifying Number	(4) Federal Expenditures
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION			
Direct Programs			
Impact Aid - P.L. 81.874 (Note A)	84.041	01-043919	$ 623
Total Direct Programs			623
Passed Through State Department of Education			
ESEA, Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	17610101043919	2,079
ESEA, Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	18610101043919	176,008
Total CFDA Number 84.010A			178,087
*IDEA - Part B, Formula	84.027	176600010439196600	12,007
*IDEA - Part B, Formula	84.027	186600010439196600	464,391
Total CFDA Number 84.027			476,398
	84.173	176610010439196610	666
*IDEA - Part B, Preschool	84.173	186610010439196610	612
Total CFDA Number 84.173			1,278
Total Special Education Cluster (IDEA)			477,676
Title III, Part A - English Language Acquisition	84.365A	18671001043919	2,226
ESEA, Title II, Part A, Supporting Effective Instr	84.367A	18694501043919	2,015
ESEA, Title IV, Part A	84.424A	18680101043919	8,532
Total Passed Through State Department of Education			668,536
TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION			669,159
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES			
Direct Programs			
Medicaid Administrative Claiming Program - MAC	93.778	01-043919	3,193
Total Direct Programs			3,193
TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES			3,193
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE			
Passed Through the State Department of Agriculture			
*National School Lunch Program - Cash Assistance	10.555	713018	81,309
*National School Lunch Prog. - Non-Cash Assistance	10.555	713018	45,223
Total CFDA Number 10.555			126,532
Total Child Nutrition Cluster			126,532
Total Passed Through the State Department of Agriculture			126,532
TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE			126,532
TOTAL EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS			$ 798,884

*Clustered Programs

See Accompanying Notes to the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards

LOVEJOY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
NOTES ON ACCOUNTING POLICIES FOR FEDERAL AWARDS
YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

1. The District uses the fund types specified in Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide. Special Revenue Funds are used to account for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by a grantor. Federal and state financial assistance generally is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund. Generally, unused balances are returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods.

2. The accounting and financial reporting treatment applied to a fund is determined by its measurement focus. The Governmental Fund types are accounted for using a current financial resources measurement focus. All Federal grant funds were accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund which is a Governmental Fund type. With this measurement focus, only current assets and current liabilities and the fund balance are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present increases and decreases in net current assets.

   The modified accrual basis of accounting is used for the Governmental Fund types and Agency Funds. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become susceptible to accrual, i.e., both measurable and available, and expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest on Long-Term Debt, which is recognized when due, and certain compensated absences and claims and judgments, which are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

   Federal grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant, and, accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as unearned revenues until earned.

3. The District participates in numerous state and Federal grant programs that are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, if any, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable at June 30, 2018, may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are not significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provisions has been recorded in the accompanying combined financial statements for such contingencies.

4. The period of availability for federal grant funds for the purpose of liquidation of outstanding obligations made on or before the ending date of the federal project period extended 30 days beyond the federal project period ending date, in accordance with provisions in the Uniform Guidance.

5. During the current year, the District received the following funds which are not included in the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards.

Total Expenditures of Federal Awards	$ 798,884
Medicaid Reimbursement (SHARS)	249,985
Federal Revenues per Financial Statements	$1,048,869

Financial Advisory Services
Provided By:

SAMCO Capital